Beginner's Korean

Jeyseon & Kangjin Lee
Beginner’s Korean
with 2 Audio CDs
HIPPOCRENE BEGINNER’S SERIES

Arabic
Armenian
Assyrian
Basque
Bulgarian (with 2 enclosed CDs)
Chinese (with 2 enclosed CDs)
Czech
Dari (with 1 enclosed CD)
Finnish
Gaelic
Greek (with 2 enclosed CDs)
Hungarian
Iraqi Arabic (with 2 enclosed CDs)
Irish (with 1 enclosed CD)
Japanese (with 2 enclosed CDs)
Lithuanian
Norwegian (with 2 enclosed CDs)
Persian
Polish (with 2 enclosed CDs)
Serbo-Croatian
Shona
Sicilian
Slovak
Swedish (with 2 enclosed CDs)
Vietnamese
Yoruba (with 2 enclosed CDs)

Also Available

Intermediate Chinese (with 1 enclosed CD)
Mastering Arabic (with 2 enclosed CDs)
Mastering Polish (with 2 enclosed CDs)
Mastering Spanish (with 2 enclosed CDs)

Hippocrene Books, Inc.
New York
# Table of Contents

## Introduction: About the Korean Language

1

## The Korean Alphabet & Pronunciation Guide

5

## The Romanization of Korean

9

## Reading Exercise

15

## Abbreviation Table

17

## LESSON 1: 인사

Greetings

19

## LESSON 2: 소개하기

Asking about Someone & Telling about Yourself

45

## LESSON 3: 간 롤기

Asking Directions

71

## LESSON 4: 날짜와 시간

Asking the Date, Day, and Time

101

## LESSON 5: 전화 걸기

Making a Telephone Call

131

## LESSON 6: 날씨와 여가 활동

Weather and Leisure Activities

161
Introduction:
About the Korean Language

Korean is the native language of 67 million people living on the Korean peninsula, as well as the heritage language of 5.6 million Diaspora Koreans.

The Korean language consists of seven geographically based dialects. Despite the differences in dialects, Korean is relatively homogeneous, with strong mutual intelligibility among speakers from different areas. This is because the mass media and formal education are based on standard speech and strongly contribute to the standardization of the language.

The closest sister language of Korean is Japanese. However, they are not mutually intelligible and their relationship is very weak. Some scholars claim that Korean and Japanese are remotely related to the Altaic languages, such as native Manchu, Mongolian, and the Turkic languages.

Although Korean and Japanese are geographically, historically, and culturally close to China, Korean and Japanese are not part of the same language family as Chinese, and therefore are not grammatically similar to Chinese. However, both Korean and Japanese have borrowed a large number of Chinese words and characters throughout the course of their long historical contact with various Chinese dynasties, and those borrowed Chinese words and characters have become an integral part of the Korean and Japanese vocabularies.

Since the end of World War II, Korean people have been in contact with many foreign countries and have borrowed thousands of words, the majority from English. During the 35-year occupation of Korea by Japan, a considerable number of Japanese words were also borrowed.
The Korean vocabulary has three components: native words and affixes (approximately 35 percent), Sino-Korean words (approximately 60 percent), and loanwords (approximately 5 percent). Native words denote daily necessities (food, clothing, and shelter), locations, basic actions, activities, states of being, lower-level numbers, body parts, natural objects, animals, and so forth.

Due to their ideographic and monosyllabic nature, Chinese characters are easily combined and recombined to coin new terms as new cultural objects and concepts are created. Most institutional terms, traditional cultural terms, personal names, and place names are Sino-Korean words. There are 14,000 loanwords in Korean, almost 9 percent from English. Most of those loanwords are commonly used, facilitating, to a certain extent, cross-cultural communication.

Korean is often called a situation-oriented language in that contextually or situationally understood elements, including subject and object, are omitted more frequently than not. Therefore, inserting the pronoun “you” or “I” in expressions such as 안녕하세요? (annyeong-haseyo?) / How are you?, or 고맙습니다 (gomaepsinda) / thank you, would sound awkward in normal contexts.

Korean is a “macro-to-micro” language. The larger context of something is presented first, followed by gradually smaller contexts, ending with the individual context. For example, when referring to someone by name, Koreans say or write the family name first and the given name second, which may be followed by a title. An address is given by first indicating the country, followed by, in descending order, the province, city, street, house number, and, finally, the name of the addressee. Koreans indicate a date with the year first, the month second, and the day last.

Korean may be called an honorific language, in that one uses different words and phrases depending on the status of the person being discussed or to whom one is speaking. Differences such as age, family relationship, and social status are systematically encoded in the structure and use of Korean. A small number of commonly used words have two forms, one plain and one honorific. The honorific forms are used with an adult of equal or greater status, such as an elder, whereas the plain forms are reserved for another of lesser status. There are also humble verbs used to express deference to an elder or one of greater status.

Korean has an extensive set of address and reference terms that are sensitive to degrees of social stratification and distance between the speaker and addressee and between the speaker and referent. The most frequently used terms for a social superior or an adult distant equal are composed of an occupational title followed by the gender-neutral honorific suffix -님 (nim), such as 교수님 (gyo-su-nim) / Professor.

This may be preceded by the full or family name. There are several titles. The most frequently used among younger co-workers or when speaking to a child or adolescent is the gender-neutral noun -쌤 (ssan). This noun is affixed to one’s full or given name. When speaking or referring to child, use either the given name alone or the full name without a title. When addressing a child by a given name, the name is followed by a particle. When the name ends with a consonant, the particle is 오 (oa). When it ends with a vowel, the particle is 아 (ya).

In Korean, first person pronouns—the English “I” and “we”—have both plain and humble forms. The plain singular form is 나 (na) and the plain plural is 우리 (u-ri), while the humble singular is 저 (jeo) and the humble plural is 저희 (jeo-hui). The humble forms are used when speaking with an elder or an adult of higher social status. Second person pronouns, the equivalent of the English “you”, are used only when speaking with children. The singular form is 너 (neo) and the plural is 너희 (neo-hui). When speaking with an adult, one must address them with their name and title. For example: 김선생님 (kim-ssan-saeng-nim) / you, teacher Kim.

Korean is currently written using both Chinese characters and the Korean phonetic alphabet known as 한국자 (hangul). Chinese characters were used exclusively in written Korean until 1443, when King Sejong the Great, the fourth king of the 조선 (jo-seon)
Dynasty, created 한글 with his court scholars. 한글 has continued to enjoy increasing favor over Chinese characters. The latter’s contemporary usage is largely restricted to newspapers and scholarly books, and even there it is limited. Chinese characters, however, are very useful in differentiating between words with identical pronunciation and 한글 spelling.

There are considerable differences between the Korean and English languages. Such differences range from pronunciation and grammar to vocabulary principles and writing systems to underlying traditions and culture. These differences make Korean one of the most challenging languages for a native English speaker to learn. We hope this book will help to make it one of the most rewarding.

Korean Alphabet & Pronunciation Guide

The Letters of the 한글 (Hangul/han-geul) Alphabet and Their Pronunciation

The current 한글 alphabet has 40 characters: 19 consonants, 8 vowels, and 13 diphthongs. A diphthong combines two separate vowel sounds. In English, examples include the “ou” sound in the word “out” and the “eo” sound in the word “people.”

Korean allows a three-way voiceless contrast (plain, aspirate, and tense) in plosive consonants, and a two-way (plain and tense) or no contrast in fricative consonants. In addition to these consonants, Korean has the liquid consonant ㄹ, which is pronounced as r in initial position or between vowels, and three nasal consonants. The Korean consonant chart is illustrated below.

There are four kinds of consonants in Korean: plosive, fricative, liquid, and nasal. Plosive consonants have three kinds of contrasts: plain, aspirate, and tense. Twelve consonants are plosive, with four in each contrast. There are 3 fricative consonants, two using the plain contrast and the other using the tense contrast. The one liquid consonant is ㄹ, although it is pronounced as r when it begins a word or appears between two vowels. There are three nasal consonants, but they are not distinguished by contrasts. A pronunciation chart, which also indicates the proper tongue position when making the consonant sounds, appears below:
Consonants change sounds depending on their position in a word. The 한글 spellings, however, do not change.

In standard Korean, there are 8 vowels and 13 diphthongs. The vowels are grouped into categories of front and back. Back vowels are further categorized as round and unround. (All front vowels are unround.) The Korean vowel chart, which indicates both these divisions and the tongue position during pronunciation, is below:

### PLOSIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Lips</th>
<th>Gum Ridge</th>
<th>Hard Palatal</th>
<th>Soft Palatal</th>
<th>Throat</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Plain</td>
<td>☑️ [p/b]</td>
<td>☑️ [t/d]</td>
<td>☑️ [k/g]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aspirate</td>
<td>☑️ [φ/φ']</td>
<td>☑️ [t'/t']</td>
<td>☑️ [k'/k']</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tense</td>
<td>☑️ [p/p]</td>
<td>☑️ [t/t]</td>
<td>☑️ [k/k]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### FRICATIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Lips</th>
<th>Gum Ridge</th>
<th>Hard Palatal</th>
<th>Soft Palatal</th>
<th>Throat</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Plain</td>
<td>☑️ [s/sh]</td>
<td>☑️ [s/ss]</td>
<td>☑️ [z/z]</td>
<td></td>
<td>☑️ [h]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tense</td>
<td>☑️ [s/sh]</td>
<td>☑️ [s/ss]</td>
<td>☑️ [s ss]</td>
<td></td>
<td>☑️ [h]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### LIQUID

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Lips</th>
<th>Gum Ridge</th>
<th>Hard Palatal</th>
<th>Soft Palatal</th>
<th>Throat</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Plain</td>
<td>☑️ [l/r]</td>
<td>☑️ [l/r]</td>
<td>☑️ [l/r]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tense</td>
<td>☑️ [l/r]</td>
<td>☑️ [l/r]</td>
<td>☑️ [l/r]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### NASAL

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Lips</th>
<th>Gum Ridge</th>
<th>Hard Palatal</th>
<th>Soft Palatal</th>
<th>Throat</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Plain</td>
<td>☑️ [m]</td>
<td>☑️ [n]</td>
<td>☑️ [ng]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

There are two semi-vowels, y and w, and they combine with 8 vowels to make 13 diphthongs. The Korean diphthong chart is represented below:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tongue Position</th>
<th>Front</th>
<th>Back</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Unround</td>
<td>Round</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High</td>
<td>[i]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mid</td>
<td>[e]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Low</td>
<td>[æ]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tongue Location</th>
<th>Unround</th>
<th>Round</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>[yae]</td>
<td>[yae]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>[ye]</td>
<td>[ye]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>[wi]</td>
<td>[wi]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>[we]</td>
<td>[we]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>[wæ]</td>
<td>[wæ]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Syllable Blocks in Korean

한글 han-geul letters are combined into syllable blocks. The syllable blocks are constructed out of what is referred to as consonant, vowel, and diphthong positions. A square syllable block has the initial consonant position followed by a vowel or diphthong position. In the final consonant position, one or two consonants may occur. If a syllable does not begin with a consonant, the syllable block must have the letter ☑️ in the initial consonant position. The letter ☑️ is silent and functions as a zero consonant in the initial position of a syllable block.

If the vowel letter in the syllable block contains one or two long vertical strokes, it is written to the right of the initial consonant letter (e.g. 내 [na], 계 [gye]). If the vowel letter in the syllable block
contains only a long horizontal stroke, the vowel letter is written below the initial consonant letter (e.g. 무 [mu], 고 [gyo]). If a diphthong letter contains a long horizontal stroke and a long vertical stroke, the initial consonant letter occurs in the upper left corner (e.g. 구 [gwi], 빌 [nwal]). When a syllable ends with consonants, they occur beneath the vowel letter (e.g. 뮄 [bwart], 금 [gim], 헤크 [heuk, heulk]). Final consonants can be all single consonant letters and the following two-letter combinations: 류 (kk), 얻 (ss), 를 (ks), 를 (nj), 를 (nh), 를 (lk), 를 (lm), 짓 (lp), 짓 (ls), 짓 (lt), 짓 (lp’), 짓 (lh), 짓 (ps). When writing the letters in syllable blocks, they should be balanced to fill the space.

To demonstrate the construction of a word in written Korean, let us consider the word 핸글 (han-geul). It has two syllable blocks, 핸 (han) and 글 (geul). In the first syllable block, 음 (h) and 나 (n) combine like this:

한 (han)

In the second syllable block, the letters 골 (g), 음 (eu), and 음 (l) combine to form:

글 (gul)

Note how, in accordance with the rules outlined above, the initial consonant 음 (h) in 핸 (han) appears with 음 (a) to its right and the final consonant 나 (n) below. With the syllable block 글 (geul), note how the initial consonant 골 (g) is placed first, with the vowel 음 (eu), which is written as a horizontal stroke, below it, and the final consonant 음 (l) appearing below the vowel.

The Romanization of Korean
(Korean Ministry of Culture and Tourism proclamation No. 2000-8)

1. Basic principles of romanization

(1) Romanization is based on standard Korean pronunciation.
(2) Symbols other than Roman letters are avoided to the greatest extent possible.

2. Summary of the romanization system

(1) Vowels are transcribed as follows:

Simple Vowels

ㅏ / a / ㅏ / o / ㅏ / ae / ㅏ / e / ㅏ / o / ㅏ / wi

Diphthongs

ㅑ / ya / ㅑ / yeo / ㅑ / yo / ㅑ / yae / ㅑ / ye / ㅑ / wa / ㅑ / wae / ㅑ / wo / ㅑ / we / ㅑ / ui

Note 1: ㅑ is transcribed as ui, even when pronounced as ㅣ.

Note 2: Long vowels are not reflected in romanization.

(2) Consonants are transcribed as follows:

Plosives (Stops)

ㄱ, ㅋ / k / kk / =k / =d, t / cc / tt / =t / =b, p / pp / pp / p
Affricates and Fricatives

\[ \times j / \times x j j / \times ch / \times s / \times s s / \equiv h \]

Nasals and Liquids

\[ \equiv n / \equiv m / \equiv ng / \equiv r, l \]

**Note 1:** The sounds \( \equiv n, \equiv m, \) and \( \equiv ng \) are transcribed respectively as \( g, d, \) and \( b \) when they appear before a vowel. They are transcribed as \( k, t, \) and \( p \) when followed by another consonant or forming the final sound of a word.

**Note 2:** \( \equiv \) is transcribed as \( r \) when followed by a vowel, and \( l \) when followed by a consonant or when appearing at the end of a word. \( \equiv ll \) is transcribed as \( ll. \)

### 3. Special provisions for romanization

(1) When Korean sound values change as in the following cases, the results of those changes are romanized.

1) The case of assimilation of adjacent consonants
2) The case of the epenthetic [inserted within the body of a word] \( \equiv \) and \( \equiv ol \)
3) Cases of palatalization
4) Cases where \( \equiv n, \equiv m, \) and \( \times \) are adjacent to \( \equiv \)

However, aspirated sounds are not reflected in case of nouns where \( \equiv \) follows \( \equiv n, \equiv m, \) and \( \equiv ol \).

**Note:** Tense (or glottalized) sounds are not reflected in cases where morphemes [the smallest part of a word that has meaning] are compounded.

(2) When there is the possibility of confusion in pronunciation, a hyphen "-" may be used.

(3) The first letter is capitalized in proper names.

(4) Personal names are written by family name first, followed by a space and the given name. In principle, syllables in given names are not separated by hyphen, but the use of a hyphen between syllables is permitted.

1) Assimilated sound changes between syllables in given names are not transcribed.
2) Romanization of family names will be determined separately.

(5) Administrative units, such as \( \equiv do, \equiv si, \equiv gun, \equiv gu, \equiv eup, \equiv myeon, \equiv ri, \equiv dong, \) and \( \equiv ga \) are transcribed respectively as \( do, si, gun, gu, eup, myeon, ri, dong, \) and \( ga \), and are preceded by a hyphen. Assimilated sound changes before and after the hyphen are not reflected in romanization.

**Note:** Terms for administrative units such as \( \equiv si, \equiv gun, \equiv eup \) may be omitted.

(6) Names of geographic features, cultural properties, and manmade structures may be written without hyphens.

(7) Proper names such as personal names and those of companies may continue to be written as they have been previously.

(8) When it is necessary to convert romanized Korean back to hangul in special cases such as in academic articles, romanization is done according to hangul spelling and not pronunciation. Each hangul letter is romanized as explained in section 2 except that \( \equiv n, \equiv m, \equiv l, \) and \( \equiv \) are always written as \( g, d, b, \) and \( l \). When \( \equiv \) has no sound value, it is replaced by a hyphen. It may also be used when it is necessary to distinguish between syllables.
Pronunciation Rules

Rule 1. Resyllabification

When a syllable in a word ends with a consonant and the next syllable begins with a vowel, the consonant, when pronounced, is part of the latter syllable. For example, 한글은 (han-geul-eun) is pronounced han-geu-reun. In this case, the sound of 께 changes from /t/ to /r/ because 께 now appears between two vowels. Similarly, when a syllable block ends in a double consonant, the second consonant is pronounced before the vowel as part of the latter syllable, so the Korean word for 읽어요 (il-geo-yo) “read,” is pronounced il-geo-yo.

Rule 2. Final closure in syllable pronunciation

At the end of a word or before a consonant, all Korean consonants are pronounced without releasing air. As a result, consonants at the end of words or preceding other consonants change sounds. For example, 께 (koch) is pronounced khot and 께도 (koch-do) is pronounced khot-do. The change of 께 to 껤 happens here because the speech organs responsible for the articulation of the word-final and pre-consonantal 께 are not released. The sound of 께 (ch’r) becomes 껤 because one does not release air when pronouncing it in these and similar words. The only consonant sounds that occur at the end of a word or before another consonant are the seven simple consonants: 께 (p/b), 껤 (t/d), 껝 (k/g), 껆 (m), 껇 (n), 껈 (ng), and 껉 (l/r). The sound changes are illustrated below.

Rule 3. Nasal assimilation

All plosive and fricative consonants become corresponding nasal consonants when preceding a nasal consonant. For example, 앞문 (ap-mun) “front gate” is pronounced am-mun and 일학년 (il-hak-nyeon) “first grade/first year” is pronounced il-hang-nyeon. The chart below fully illustrates the changes.

Rule 4. 껆 to 껈 assimilation

When 껆 (l/r) and 껆 (n) appear together in a word, the n sound is usually replaced by the l/r sound, as in the Korean word for “seven years,” 채년 (chil-lyeon). When l/r is followed by the vowel 껆 (ya) in certain compound words, another l/r is inserted between them, as in the Korean word for “liquid medicine,” 물액 (mul-lyak).

Rule 5. Tensification

When a plain plosive consonant (ㅋ (p/b), 땅 (t/d), 크 (ch/j), 껝 (k/g)) or the fricative consonant 껆 (s/sh) is preceded by a plosive or fricative consonant (ㅋ, 땅, 크, 껆[p’], 껆[t’], 크[ch’], 껝[k’], 껆[pp], 껆[tt], 껆[tch], 껝[kk], 껆[h], 껆[ss]) it becomes a corresponding tense consonant, as in the words 학생 (hak-saeng) “students,” 없다 (eop-tta) “not exist,” and 학교 (hak-kkyo) “school.”

Rule 6. Aspiration and the weakening of 껆

When the fricative 껆 is preceded or followed by a plain plosive consonant (ㅋ (p/b), 땅 (t/d), 크 (ch/j), 껝 (k/g)), it merges with the consonant to produce a corresponding aspirate con-
sonant (≈ [p’], ≈ [t’], ≈ [ch’], ≈ [k’]), as in the words for 졀다 (jo-ta) ‘to be good’, 입학 (i-pak) ‘entering school’, and 작하다 (cha-ka-da) ‘to be kind’.

**Rule 7. Double consonant reduction**

As indicated in Rule 1, the second of the two consonants at the end of a syllable is, when pronounced, carried over to the following syllable if the latter syllable does not begin with a consonant. However, one of the two consonants becomes silent at the end of a word or before a consonant, as in the words for “price,” 값 (gap) and 갓도 (gap-to). In English, up to three consonants may be combined in a syllable, but not even two may be combined in Korean. It is difficult to predict which of two consonants will become silent. The silent consonant is usually the second one, but there are exceptions.

**Rule 8. Palatalization**

When a word ending in ≈ (t/d) or ≈ (t’) is followed by a suffix beginning with the vowel ㅣ (i) or the semivowel ㅏ (yoe), the ≈ and ≈ are pronounced, respectively, chi’ and ch’, as in the words for 닫혀 요 (da-chyeo-yo) “to be closed,” and 닫히다 (bu-chi-da) “to attach.” This change is technically called “palatalization” because the original consonants, which are pronounced using the gum-ridge, are articulated with the hard palate.

한글

Reading Exercise

[연습문제]

Please read the words below. An answer key appears on the following page.

1. 아이, 오아, 요요, 우유
2. 나이, 나라, 사자, 가지, 고추, 개구리, 나무, 다리, 라디, 오, 모자, 무지개, 바지, 바구니, 사다리, 지도, 조개, 치마, 해바라기, 야기, 거미, 머리, 너구리, 소, 그네
3. 눈사람, 당근, 독수리, 다람쥐, 리본, 볼개, 말, 버섯, 선물, 사슴, 안경, 옥수수, 자동차, 장자리, 바늘, 거북이, 오징어, 고래, 용, 물소, 드럼, 독마, 가리, 진주
4. 야구, 달걀, 야자수, 영소, 병아리, 주사위, 물, 유랑선
5. 책상, 철면조, 컵, 고끼리, 카메라, 코뿔소, 토끼, 타죠, 태극기, 포도, 표범, 피아노, 종자가, 해, 호박, 편지, 도토리, 표지판, 우체통, 트저통, 크레용, 피라미
6. 고리, 까마귀, 말, 매, 빛, 싸움, 씨름, 짜장면, 골짜
Abbreviations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>abbr.</th>
<th>abbreviation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>adj.</td>
<td>adjective (including noun-modifier in Korean)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adv.</td>
<td>adverb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coll.</td>
<td>colloquial</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>conj.</td>
<td>conjunction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cop.</td>
<td>copula, i.e., linking verb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>count.</td>
<td>counter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dat.</td>
<td>dative/indirect object particle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dir.</td>
<td>direction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e.g.</td>
<td>for example</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fut.</td>
<td>future tense</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hon.</td>
<td>honorific</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loc.</td>
<td>location</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n.</td>
<td>noun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>num.</td>
<td>number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>obj.</td>
<td>object/object particle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>part.</td>
<td>particle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pl.</td>
<td>plural</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pren.</td>
<td>pre-noun/noun modifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pres.</td>
<td>present tense</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pron.</td>
<td>pronoun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pst.</td>
<td>past tense</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sing.</td>
<td>singular</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subj.</td>
<td>subject/subject particle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>top.</td>
<td>topic/topic particle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>v.</td>
<td>verb (including both active verb and descriptive verb in Korean)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
BEGINNER'S KOREAN

\[ v. \text{stem} \quad \text{verb stem} \]
\[ v. \text{intr.} \quad \text{intransitive verb, i.e., cannot have an object} \]
\[ v. \text{tr.} \quad \text{transitive verb, i.e., can have an object} \]

---

Lesson 1: Greetings
Lesson 1: Greetings

덕분에 잘 지내셨습니까.
deok-bun-e jal ji-nae-seum-ni-da.
I have been doing fine, thanks to you.

덕분에 잘 지냅니다.
deok-bun-e jal ji-naem-ni-da.
I am fine, thanks to you.

그저 그렇게.
geu-jeo geu-reoi-seum-ni-da.
So-so.

만나 범게 맞서 반갑습니다.
man-na boep-ge dwae-seo ban-gap-seum-ni-da.
Nice to meet you.

만나 범게 맞서 정말 축하했습니다.
I was glad to meet you.

다시 범게 맞서 정말 반갑습니다.
da-si boep-ge dwae-seo jeong-mal ban-gap-seum-ni-da.
Nice to see you again.

저도 반갑습니다.
jeo-do ban-gap-seum-ni-da.
I am glad, too.

저도 잘 지냅니다.
jeo-do jal ji-nam-ni-da.
I am doing fine, too.

저도 축하했습니다.
I was glad, too.

표현 Patterns

안녕하세요?
an-nyeong-ha-sim-ni-kka?
How are you? / Hello.

안녕히 가십시오.
an-nyeong-hi ga-sip-si-o.
Good-bye (to the one leaving).

안녕히 계십시오.
an-nyeong-hi gye-sip-si-o.
Good-bye (to the one staying).

처음 뵙겠습니다.
cheo-cum boep-get-seum-ni-da.
Nice to meet you. (first time only)

다음에 또 뵙겠습니다.
da-cum-e to boep-get-seum-ni-da.
See you next time.

오래간만입니다.
o-rae-gan-man-im-ni-da.
Long time, no see.

그 동안 잘 지내셨습니까?
geu dong-an jal ji-nae-syeot-seum-ni-kka?
How have you been? (lit. Have you been doing well?)

요즘 어떻게 지내십니까?
yo-jeum eo-tteo-ke ji-nae-sim-ni-kka?
How are you these days?
대화 Model Conversations

(1)
이정호: 안녕하십니까? 처음 뵐겠습니다. 저는 이정호라고 합니다.
이정호: 저도 반갑습니다. 그런데 여기서 김현준님은 어떤 일을 하십니까?
김현준: 저는 IBM에서 근무합니다. 컴퓨터 엔지니어입니다. 이전 상태로 어떤 일을 하십니까?
이정호: 저는 아직 학생입니다. 의과대학에 다닙니다.
김현준: 저는 IBM에서 근무합니다. 컴퓨터 엔지니어입니다. 이전 상태로 어떤 일을 하십니까?
이정호: 저는 IBM에서 근무합니다. 컴퓨터 엔지니어입니다.

(2)
박성민: 안녕하십니까, 태민씨. 정말 오랜만입니다.
최태민: 안녕하십니까, 성민씨. 요즘 어떻게 지내십니까?
박성민: 저는 IBM에서 근무합니다. 컴퓨터 엔지니어입니다.
영문번역 English Translation

(1)
Lee: How are you? Nice to meet you. My name is Jeong-Ho Lee. What is your name?
Lee: Nice to meet you, too. By the way, what do you do for living?
Kim: I am working at IBM. I am a computer engineer. What do you do for living, Mr. Lee?
Lee: I am still a student yet. I am attending medical school.

(2)
Park: Hello, Tae-min. Long time, no see. [lit. It has been a really long time, no see.]
Choi: Hi, Seong-min. How are you?
Park: I am fine. How are you doing these days?
Choi: I am doing fine, too. I am so glad to see you again.
Park: I am glad, too.

(3)
Lee: Mr. Kim, it was so nice [lit. happy] to meet you. See you next time.
Kim: It was nice to meet you, too. [lit. I was happy, too.] Good-bye.
Lee: OK. Good-bye.
여휘 Vocabulary

Nouns & Pronouns

김선생님 gim-seon-saeng-nim
김현준 gim-hyeon-jun
박성민 bak-seong-min
성민씨 seong-min-ssi
성철 seong-ham
엔지니어 en-ji-ni-eo.
의과대학 ui-kkwa-dae-hak
이선생님 i-seon-saeng-nim
이제호 i-jeong-ho
일 il
저 jeo
최대민 choe-tae-min
컴퓨터 keon-pu-teo
태민씨 tae-min-ssi
학생 hak-saeng

Mr. Kim
Kim, Hyeon-Jun
Park, Seong-Min
Seong-Min
name (hon.)
engineer
medical school
Mr. Lee
Lee, Jeong-Ho
work, job
I (pron., hum.)
Choi, Tae-Min
computer
Tae-Min
student

Verbs

gi-da ga-da
jay-si-da gye-si-da
견무하다 geum-mu-ha-da
dan-da da-ni-da
doe-da da-eo-da
만나 타하다 man-nu-boep-da
반갑다 han-gap-da
별다 boep-da
안녕하다 an-nyeong-ha-da
오래간만이다 o-rae-gan-man-i-da
줄↘다 jeul-geup-da

to go

to stay (hon.)
to work at (company name)
to attend

to become
to meet (hon.)
to be glad
to meet, to see (hon.)
to be well
to be well
to be happy

Adverbs & Conjunctions

지내다 ji-nae-da
doing
하다 ha-da
to do
to spend time
dURING THE TIME
by the way (when change topic)
then
again
next time
thanks to (you)
again
Excuse me....
yet
safely, peacefully
which
how
yes, OK
these days
well
really, so
for the first time
Lesson 1: Greetings

(1) More Useful Expressions

고맙습니다. go-map-seum-ni-da.
Thank you.
감사합니다. gam-sa-ham-ni-da.
Thank you.

천만에요. cheon-man-e-yo.
You are welcome.
별 말씀을요. byeol mal-seum-eul-yo.
You are welcome.
무슨 말씀을요. mu-seun mal-seum-eul-yo.
You are welcome.

죄송합니다. joe-song-ham-ni-da.
I am sorry.
괜찮습니다. gwaen-chan-seum-ni-da.
It’s OK. / No problem.

어서 오세요. eo-seo o-se-yo.
Welcome.
실탈합니다. sil-lye-ham-ni-da.
Excuse me.

Note:
In Korean, 안녕하십니까? (an-nyeong-ha-sim-ni-kka), which literally means, “Are you at peace?,” is used as a greeting regardless of the time of day. It functions as the equivalent of “Good morning,” “Good afternoon,” and “Good evening.” It can also mean, “How are you?,” or “Nice to meet you.” The appropriate response is 안녕하십니까? (an-nyeong-ha-sim-ni-kka). As for other greetings in the dialogues, 안녕히 가십시오 (an-nyeong-hi ga-sip-si-o) literally means “Please go in peace,” and 안녕히 계십시오 (an-nyeong-hi gye-sip-si-o) means “Please stay in peace.”

The expressions 죄송하겠습니다 (cheo-eum boep-get-ssuem-ni-da), which literally means “It’s the first time seeing you,” and 안나 봤게 되서 반갑습니다 (man-na boep-ge dwae-seo ban-gap-seum-ni-da), the equivalent of “I am so glad to meet you,” are used only when meeting someone for the first time. When parting, one says 다음에 또 볼겠습니다 (da-cum-e tto boep-get-seum-ni-da), which means “See you again next time.” Those who have previously met one another say 또 봤게 되서 반갑습니다 (tto boep-ge dwae-seo ban-gap-seum-ni-da) or 다시 봤게 되서 반갑습니다 (da-si boep-ge dwae-seo ban-gap-seum-ni-da). Both expressions mean “I am so glad to see you again.”

When saying one’s name, one uses the patterns 저는 [name] 입니다 (jeo-neun [name] im-ni-da) or 저는 [name] (이)라고 합니다 (jeo-neun [name] (i)-ra-go ham-ni-da). With 저는 [name] (이)라고 합니다, the 이 preceding 라고 합니다 only occurs when the name ends in a consonant. For example, 저는 김현준이라고 합니다 (jeo-neun gim-hyeon-jun-i-ra-go ham-ni-da)/ “My name is Gim-Hyeon-Jun.” The 저는 (jeo-neun) is optional with both patterns.

The Korean equivalent of “Thank you” is 고맙습니다 (go-map-seum-ni-da), or 감사합니다 (gam-sa-ham-ni-da). Appropriate replies include 천만에요 (cheon-man-e-yo), 별 말씀을요 (byeol mal-seum-eul-yo), and 무슨 말씀을요 (mu-seun mal-seum-eul-yo). One may also smile silently or reply with네 (ne), the equivalent of “Yes.” The expression 천만에요 means “Not at all,” and both 별 말씀을요 and 무슨 말씀을요 translate as “Don’t mention it.”

The proper response to 죄송합니다 (joe-song-ham-ni-da) / “I am sorry” is 괜찮습니다 (gwaen-chan-seum-ni-da) / “It’s OK.” If 실례합니다 (sil-lye-ham-ni-da) / “Excuse me” is said, one should remember there is no appropriate reply in Korean. One responds through one’s facial expression.

When visiting someone’s home or entering a store, the host or salesperson will say the Korean equivalent of “Welcome,” 어서 오세요 (eo-seo o-se-yo), which literally means “Please come hurry.” The appropriate reply when visiting someone’s home is 실례하겠습니다.
(2) Deferential Sentence Endings

The suffixes affixed to the verb at the close of a sentence indicate the relative social status and/or the personal relationship of the speaker and the addressee(s). There are four speech levels or categories for these relationships: deferential, polite, intimate, and plain.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Deferential</th>
<th>Statement</th>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Request</th>
<th>Suggestion</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>~습니다.</td>
<td>~습니까?</td>
<td>~습시오. (hon.)</td>
<td>~습시요. (hon.)</td>
<td>~습이요.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| ~아요/어요. | ~아요/어요? | ~아요/어요. | ~아요/어요. |
| ~아요/어요. | ~아요/어요? | ~아요/어요. | ~아요/어요. |
| ~아요/어요. | ~아요/어요? | ~아요/어요. | ~아요/어요. |

| Intimate | ~아/어. | ~아/어? | ~아/어. | ~아/어. |
| ~아/어. | ~아/어? | ~아/어. | ~아/어. |
| ~아/어. | ~아/어? | ~아/어. | ~아/어. |
| ~아/어. | ~아/어? | ~아/어. | ~아/어. |

| Plain | ~다 | ~니/나? | ~아/어/柃 | ~치 |
| ~다 | ~니/나? | ~아/어/柃 | ~치 |
| ~다 | ~니/나? | ~아/어/柃 | ~치 |
| ~다 | ~니/나? | ~아/어/柃 | ~치 |

The deferential style of speech is generally spoken in formal settings, such as conferences, news broadcasts, business meetings, and formal speeches or interviews. By and large, males use this style more often than females, who generally use the polite style in these circumstances.

Additionally, the deferential style is frequently used when beginning a conversation. This occurs when people, usually males, meet for the first time. After introductions are made in the deferential style, further conversation uses the polite form, as a relationship is now established.

The table below illustrates the patterns used for speaking in the deferential in both the simple and honorific forms. The pattern is determined by whether the verb stem (e.g. 받 [bat] in 받다 [bat-da] "to receive") ends in a vowel or a consonant. The consonant pattern is indicated with a C and is demonstrated with 받다. The vowel pattern is indicated with a V, with the forms demonstrated using the verb 가다 (ga-da) "to go."

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Statement</th>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Request</th>
<th>Suggestion</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>


(3) Case Particles

A. The Subject Particles ~-어 (i) and 가 (ga)

The particles ~-어 and 가 determine the subject of a sentence that depicts an action. The subject of a sentence is the noun denoting who or what is performing the action. The particle ~-어 is attached to subject nouns that end in a consonant, such as 음식 (eum-sig)/“food” in the sentence 음식이 맛있습니다 (eum-sig-i mas-it-seum-ni-da)/“The food is delicious.” The particle 가 is attached to subject nouns that end in a vowel, such as 한국어 (han-gug- eo)/“the Korean language” in the sentence 한국어가 재미있습니다 (han-gug- eo-ga jae-mi-it-seum-ni-da)/“Korean is fun.”

B. The Object Particles ~을 (eul) and 드 (reul)

The particles ~을 and 드 indicate the object of a sentence that depicts an action. The object of a sentence is the noun denoting what or whom the action is being performed upon. The particle ~을 is attached to object nouns that end in a consonant, such as 아침 (a-chim)/“breakfast” as in the sentence 아침을 먹습니다 (jeong-ho-ga a-chim-eul meok-seum-ni-da)/“Jeong-Ho eats breakfast.” The particle 드 is attached to object nouns that end in a vowel, such as 커피 (keo-pi)/“coffee” in the sentence 커피를 마십니다 (ma-i-keul-i keo-pi-reul ma-sim-ni-da)/“Michael drinks a coffee.”

C. The Topic Particles ~은 (eun) and ~는 (neun)

The particles ~은 and ~는 follow the topic noun of a descriptive sentence. The topic noun is the noun that the sentence describes. The particle ~은 is attached to nouns that end in a consonant, such as 마이클 (ma-i-keul)/“Michael” in the sentence 마이클은 미스터 크리스 마이클 (ma-i-keul-eun mi-ssu-keu-si ma-i-keul)/“Michael is small.” The particle ~는 is attached to nouns that end in a vowel, such as 정호 (jeong-ho)/“Jeong-Ho” in the sentence 정호는 키가 작습니다 (jeong-ho-neun ki-ga keum-ni-da)/“Jeong-Ho is tall.”

D. The Locative Particles ~에 (e) and ~에서 (e-seo)

The sentence pattern 에 있다/없다 (e it-da/eop-da) is used to indicate where an object exists in space. Two things are presented: the noun’s existence and its location, which, in the context of the sentence, is unchanging. For example:

신문이 테이블 위에 있습니다. (sin-nun-i te-i-beul wi-gi it-seum-ni-da)
The newspaper is on the table.

(Note: The verb 있다 (it-da) roughly translates as “to be.” The verb 없다 (eop-da) is its negative, or “not to be.” These verbs have conjugations, e.g. 있습니다 (it-seum-ni-da) in the above sentence. They are discussed further in Unit 4.)

When ~에 is used with directional verbs, such as 가다 (ga-da)/“to go,” 오다 (o-da)/“to come,” or 다다다 (da-ni-da) “to attend,” it denotes the movement of the subject noun to the indicated location. Examples:

마이클은 내일 LA에 갈니다. (ma-i-keul-eun nac-il el-e-i-gam-ni-da)
Michael goes to L.A. tomorrow.

Jeong-Ho goes (attends) a medical school.
The particle ~에서 to indicates the location or setting of an activity. Examples:

현중씨는 IBM에서 근무합니다.
(hyeon-jun-ssi-neun a-i-bi-em-e-seo geun-mu-ham-ni-da)
Hyeon-Joon works at IBM.

정호씨는 병원에서 일합니다.
(jeong-ho-ssi-neun byeong-won-e-seo il-ham-ni-da)
Jeong-Ho works at a hospital.

E. The Special Particles은 (eun)/는 (neun), 도 (do), and 만 (man)

The particles ~은/는, ~도, and ~만 are used when comparing things. Nouns ending in a consonant use 은, and nouns ending in a vowel use 는. The particles ~은/는 are always affixed to the first noun in the comparison.

The particles ~은/는, when affixed to all nouns being compared, denote difference. The nouns are being contrasted. For example:

정호는 의사입니다. 미셸은 선생님입니다.
(jeong-ho-nueo ui-sa-im-ni-da. mi-syel-eun
seon-saeng-nim-im-ni-da)
Jeong-Ho is a doctor. Michelle is a teacher.

The particle ~도 denotes similarity. It indicates that a noun is similar to the first one. For example:

정호는 의사입니다. 미셸도 의사입니다.
Jeong-Ho is a doctor. Michalle is a doctor, too.

Lesson 1: Greetings

The particle ~만 roughly translates as “only.” It indicates that the final noun is unique among the other nouns in the comparison. For example:

미셸은 선생님입니다. 마이클도 선생님입니다. 정호만 의사입니다.
(mi-syel-eun seon-saeng-nim-im-ni-da. ma-i-keul-do
Michelle is a teacher. Michael is a teacher, too. Only Jeong-Ho is a doctor.

Note the use of ~도 to denote Michael’s similarity to Michelle.

(4) Topic-Comment Structure

The topic-comment structure (Noun 1 is Noun 2) is one of the basic Korean sentence structures. It is a fundamental way of conveying ideas. The speaker picks a person, idea, or object and uses the structure to describe and comment on it.

The topic comment sentence pattern in Korean is [Noun 1] 은/는 [Noun 2] 입니다([Noun 1]-eun/-neun [Noun 2]-im-ni-da.). The particle ~이/가 always comes after the second noun. Its presence changes the noun into a predicate. The pattern is commonly used when identifying oneself. Examples:

저는 김현중입니다.
(jeoe-neun gim-hyeon-jun-im-ni-da)
My name is Hyeon-Jun Kim. (lit. I Hyeon-Jun Kim am.)

저는 학생입니다.
(jeoe-neun hak-saeng-im-ni-da)
I am a student. (lit. I a student am.)
The negative of the topic-comment structure (Noun 1 isn’t Noun 2) in Korean is [Noun 1] 은/는 [Noun 2] 이/가 아닙니다. ([Noun 1] -eun/-neun [Noun 2]-i/-ga a-nim-ni-da.). The particle 이/가 (-i/-ga) only occurs in negative constructions, and the word 아닙니다 (a-nim-ni-da) is the negative of 입니다 (im-ni-da). Examples:

저는 학생이 아닙니다.
(jeo-neun hak-saeng-i a-nim-ni-da)
I am not a student.

미셸은 의사가 아닙니다.
(mi-syeul-eun ui-sa-ga a-nim-ni-da)
Michelle is not a doctor.

(5) The use of -(으)시- ((eu)-si) as an honorific.

When the characters -(으)시- are affixed to the verb stem, it indicates that the subject of the sentence is a person deserving of respect, such as an elderly person or someone of higher social status. For example:

할머니가 가십니다
(hal-meo-ni-ga-si-im-ni-da)
Grandmother is going.

This may also be done as a sign of courtesy.

In Korea, one attends elementary school for six years, middle school for three years, and high school for three years. Colleges and universities offer four-year undergraduate programs as well as graduate education. There are also two-year junior colleges (often called community colleges in the U.S.). The school year begins in March and ends in February.

Elementary school and middle school education are compulsory in Korea. Unlike the United States, kindergarten is not a part of Korean elementary school. Students between the ages of 4 and 7 have the option of attending private institutes called 유치원 (yu-chi-won) before they start their regular schooling. The 유치원 are the equivalent of U.S. preschools.

유치원 yu-chi-won
kindergarten
유치원생 yu-chi-won-saeng
kindergarten student
초등학교 cho-deung-hak-gyo
elementary school
초등학생 cho-deung-hak-saeng
elementary school student
중학교 jung-hak-gyo
middle school
중학생 jung-hak-saeng
middle school student
고등학교 go-deung-hak-gyo
high school
고등학생 go-deung-hak-saeng
high school student
대학교 dae-hak-gyo
college, university
대학생 dae-hak-saeng
college student
대학원생 dae-hag-won
graduate school
대학원생 dae-hag-won-saeng
graduate student
(2) **Colleges in a University**

법과대학 (법대) beop-gwa-daehak (beop-daeh)  
의과대학 (의대) ui-kkwa-daehak (ui-daeh)  
치과대학 (치대) chi-kkwa-daehak (chi-daeh)  
약학대학 (약대) yak-hak-daehak (yak-daeh)  
사범대학 (사대) sa-beom-daehak (sa-daeh)  
상경대학 (상대) sang-gyeong-daehak (sang-daeh)  
공과대학 (공대) gong-kkwa-daehak (gong-daeh)  
음악대학 (음대) eum-ak-daehak (eum-daeh)  
미술대학 (미대) mi-sul-daehak (mi-daeh)  
체육대학 (체대) che-yuk-daehak (che-daeh)  
인문대학 (인문대) in-mun-daehak (in-mun-daeh)  
자연대학 (자연대) ja-yeon-daehak (ja-yeon-daeh)

(3) **Occupations**

가수 ga-su  
간호원 gan-ho-won  
공무원 gong-mu-won  
교수 gyo-su  
군인 gun-in

singer  
nurse  
civil servant  
professor  
military personnel

Lesson 1: Greetings

기자 gi-ja  
디자이너 di-ja-i-neo  
목사 mok-sa  
변호사 byeon-ho-sa  
비서 bi-seo  
사업가 sa-eop-ga  
선생 seon-sang  
약사 yak-sa  
엔지니어 en-ji-ni-eo  
운동선수 un-dong-seon-su  
문진가 sa-jeon-gi-sa  
의사 ui-sa  
작가 jak-ga  
학생 hak-saeng  
회사원 hoe-sa-won

group

(4) **Names of Majors**

건축학 geon-chuk-hak  
경영학 gyeong-yeong-hak  
경제학 gyeong-je-hak  
공학 gong-hak  
교육학 gyo-yuk-hak  
동양학 dong-yang-hak  
문학 mun-hak  
물리학 mul-li-hak  
미술 mi-sul  
법학 beo-pak  
사회학 sa-hoe-hak  
생물학 saeng-mul-hak  
수학 su-hak  
심리학 sim-ni-hak  
언어학 eon-eo-hak  
역사학 yeok-sa-hak

architect  
business management  
economics  
engineering  
education  
Asian studies  
literature  
physics  
fine arts  
law  
sociology  
biology  
mathematics  
psychology  
linguistics  
history
Lesson 1: Greetings

문화적 참고사항 Cultural Notes

(1) Korean Names

In Korean, the family name comes first, followed by the given name. Korean names generally have three syllables: one for the family name and two for the given name. For example, with the name 이정호 (i-jeong-ho), 이 (i) is the family name and 정호 (jeong-ho) is the given name. However, there are some two-syllable family names, such as 채길 (je-gal) or 황보 (hwang-bo). Korea has approximately 300 family names. The five most common are 김 (kim)/Kim, 이 (i)/Lee, 박 (bak)/Park, 최 (choe)/Choi, and 정 (jeong)/Chung (or Jung).

(2) -선생님 (seon-saeng-nim) vs. -씨 (ssi)

The word 선생님 (seon-saeng-nim) literally means “teacher,” but Koreans use the word as a standard form of address. It can be used as a simple honorific, the equivalent of “Mr.” “Mrs.,” or “Ms.,” or as a title when addressing one’s elders, older people in general, or business colleagues with whom one does not have a personal relationship. The proper way of using the word 선생님 when addressing someone is to add it to the end of their full name or last name. Using it with the full name is more formal and polite.

The honorific suffix -씨 (-ssi), used in Model Conversations (2) above, is an expression of courtesy towards one’s coworkers. It is not appropriate when speaking or referring to one’s elders or older people. When using -씨, one should attach it to the addressee’s first name or to the last name when preceded by the first name. Referring to someone by just his or her last name followed by -씨 is condescending.
(3) 설례지만 (sil-lye-ji-man) Excuse me, but...

The phrase 설례지만 (sil-lye-ji-man) always accompanies personal questions, such as those about one's age, job, or family life (including marriage). In Korean culture, such questions are always asked when meeting someone for the first time. The answers provide information that is necessary in determining the appropriate honorifics and sentence endings in further conversation.

(4) 덕분에 (deok-bun-e) Thanks to you

The expression 잘 지내셨습니까? (jal ji-nae-syeot-seum-ni-kka) is the equivalent of “How are you?” or “How have you been?” The usual Korean reply is 덕분에 잘 지내셨습니다 (deok-bun-e jal ji-naet-seum-ni-da), which means “Thanks to you, I am fine,” or “Thanks to you, I have been fine.” The expression of gratitude reflects the traditional Korean belief that another's concern and blessing helps one to maintain a safe and happy life.

(5) Greetings with a bow

Bowing is the easiest and most common way to show courtesy when greeting someone. In general, the younger person initiates the bow and the older person reciprocates. Bowing is done by bending both head and waist about 15 degrees forward. Male adults often shake hands with one or both hands while bowing. During this greeting process, it is common courtesy to ask the addressee how they have been or whether they have eaten.

Lesson 1: Greetings

연습문제 Exercises

1. Please respond to the following:

(1) 안녕하십니까?
an-nyeong-ha-sim-ni-kka?
(2) 처음 뵐겠습니다. 만나서 반갑습니다.
(3)요즘 어떻게 지내십니까?
yo-jeum eo-tteo-ke ji-nae-sim-ni-kka?
(4)설례지만 성함이 어떻게 되십니까?
sil-le-ji-man seong-ham-eo-tteo-ke doe-sim-ni-kka?
(5)설례지만 어떤 일을 하십니까?
sil-le-ji-man eo-tteon il-eul ha-sim-ni-kka?

2. Please translate the following into English:

(1) 감사합니다. gam-sa-ham-ni-da.
(2) 설례합니다. sil-le-ham-ni-da.
(3) 죄송합니다. joe-song-ham-ni-da.
(4) 어서 오세요. eo-seo o-se-yo.
(5) 별 말씀요. byeol mal-sseum-eul-yo.

3. Please translate the following into Korean:

(1) How have you been?
(2) I have been doing fine, thanks to you.
(3) Long time, no see.
(4) See you next time.
(5) Nice to see you again.

4. Please write a paragraph introducing yourself (what your name is, where you work or study, etc.).
Lesson 2: Asking about Something & Talking about Yourself
Lesson 2: Asking about Someone & Talking about Yourself

저는 한국계 미국인입니다.
I am Korean-American.

저는 미시간에서 태어났습니다.
I was born in Michigan.

정호씨는 몇해 연세가 어떻게 되십니까?
jeong-ho-ssi-neun ol-hae yeon-se-ga eo-tteo-ke doe-sim-ni-kka?
How old are you this year, Jeong-Ho?

서른 살입니다.
seo-reun dul-im-ni-da.
I am thirty-two.

저도 서른 두살이에요.
jeo-do seo-reun du-sal-i-e-yo.
I am also thirty-two.

저하고 동갑입니다.
jeo-ha-go dong-gab-i-si-gun-yo.
You are the same age as me.

저보다 좀 많으시군요.
jeo-bo-da jom man-eu-si-gun-yo.
You are a little older than me.

저보다 좀 적으시군요.
jeo-bo-da jom jeog-eu-si-gun-yo.
You are a little younger than me.

현준씨는 생일이 언제세요?
hyeon-jun-ssi-neun saeng-il-i eon-je-se-yo?
When is your birthday, Hyeon-Jun?
Lesson 2: Asking about Someone & Talking about Yourself

no at all times without feeling uneasy. This is different than English, where negative questions are generally considered rude and confrontational.)

네, 아직 없어요
ne, a-jik eops-eo-yo.
No, I still don’t have any (lit. one).

아니오, 하나 있어요.
a-ni-o, ha-na iss-eo-yo.
Yes, I have one.

아이가 몇이세요?
a-i-ga myeoech-i-se-yo?
How many kids do you have?

둘 둘 아들 하나에요.
tal dul a-deul ha-na-ye-yo.
I have two daughters and a son.

저는 4월이에요.
jeo-neun sa-wol-i-e-yo.
It is in April.

저는 7월생이에요.
jeo-neun chil-sol-sseang-i-e-yo.
I was born in July.

정호씨는 결혼하셨어요?
jeong-ho-sse-neun gyeol-hon-ja syeoss-eo-yo?
Are you married, Jeong-Ho?

아니오, 저는 아직 혼자 살아요.
a-ni-o, jeo-neun a-jik hon-ja sal-a-yo.
No, I’m still single. (lit. No, I still live by myself.)

네, 저는 작년에 였어요.
ne, joo-neun jang-nyeon-e haess-eo-yo.
Yes, I got married last year.

현준씨는 가족이 어떻게 되세요?
hyeun-jun-sse-neun ga-jog-i eo-teo-ke doe-se-yo?
How many people are in your family?

집사람하고 저하고 둘이에요.
jip-sa-ram-ha-go joo-ha-go dul-i-e-yo.
Two people: my wife and I. (lit. My wife and I, all are two.)

아이는 아직 없으세요?
a-i-neun a-jik eops-eu-se-yo?
Do you have any children yet? (lit. Don’t you have children yet?)

(Note: In Korean sometimes questions are asked in the negative because one wants to give the respondent the opportunity to answer
대화 Model Conversations

(1) 이정호: 실례지만 성향이 어떻게 되십니까?
sil-lye-ji-man seong-ham-i eo-tteo-ke doe-sim-ni-kka?

김현준: 저는 김현준입니다. 성향이 어떻게 되십니까?
jeo-neun gim-hyon-jun-im-ni-da. seong-ham-i eo-tteo-
ke doe-sim-ni-kka?

이정호: 저는 이정호라고 합니다. 그런대 실례지만 김현상남
은 어떤 일을 하십니까?
jeo-neun i-jeong-ho-ra-go ham-ni-da.
geu-reon-de sil-lye-ji-man gim-seon-saeng-nim-eun eo-
tteon il-eul ha-sim-ni-kka?

김현준: 저는 IBM에서 근무합니다. 컴퓨터 엔지니어입니다. 
이상상남은 어떤 일을 하십니까?
jeo-neun a-i-bi-em-e-seo geun-mu-ham-ni-da.
keom-pu-teo en-ji-ni-eo-im-ni-da.
i-seon-saeng-nim-eun eo-tteon il-eul ha-sim-ni-kka?

이정호: 저는 아직 학생입니다. 의과대학에 다닙니다.
jeo-neun a-jik hak-seng-im-ni-da. ui-kkwa-dae-hag-e
-da-nim-ni-da.

(2) 김현준: 정호씨는 애디 어디십니까?
jeong-ho-sse-neun daeg-i eo-di-sim-ni-kka?

이정호: 샌드파이어이고있습니다. 현준씨는 애디 어디십니까?
saen-di-e-i-go-im-ni-da. hyeon-jun-sse-neun daeg-i
eo-di-sim-ni-kka?

김현준: 저는 한국에서 왔습니다. 수원에서 산니다.
jeo-neun han-gug-e-seo wat-sum-ni-da. su-won-e-seo
sam-ni-da.

이정호: 그림 현준씨는 한국 본이십니까?
geu-reom hyeon-jun-sse-neun han-guk bun-i-sim-ni-kka?

김현준: 네, 그렇습니다. 정호씨는요?
ne, eu-reot-seum-ni-da. jeong-ho-sse-neun-yo?

Lesson 2: Asking about Someone & Talking about Yourself

이정호: 저는 한국에 미국인입니다. 미시간에 태어났습니다.

김현준: 실례지만 정호씨는 올해 언제가 어떻게 되십니까?
sil-lye-ji-man jeong-ho-sse-neun ol-hae yeon-se-ga
eo-tteo-ke doe-sim-ni-kka?

이정호: 서른 줄입니다.
seo-reun-dul-im-ni-da.

김현준: 아, 그럼 지하고 동갑이시군요. 저도 서른 두살이에요.
a, eu-reom jeo-ha-go dong-gab-i si-gun-yo. jeo-do
seo-reun du-sal-i-e-yo.

이정호: 그러세요? 그럼 생일이 언제세요?
geu-reo-se-yo? eu-reom saeng-il-i kon-je-se-yo?

김현준: 4월이에요.
sa-wol-i-e-yo.

이정호: 아, 그러세요? 그럼 저보다 좀 많으시군요. 저는 7월
생이에요.
a, eu-reo-se-yo? eu-reom joo-bo-da jom

(4) 김현준: 정호씨는 결혼하셨어요?
jeong-ho-sse-neun gyeol-hon-ha-syeoss-eo-yo?

이정호: 아니오, 아직 혼자 살아요. 현준씨는요?
a-ni-o, a-jik hon-ja sal-a-yo. hyeon-jun-sse-neun-yo?

김현준: 저는 작년에 했어요.
jeo-neun jang-nyeon-e haess-eo-yo.

이정호: 그럼 가족이 어떻게 되세요?
geu-reom ga-bog-i eo-tteo-ke doe-se-yo?

김현준: 점심하고 저하고 돌아요.
jip-sa-ram-ha-go jeo-ha-go dul-i-e-yo.

이정호: 아이는 아직 없으세요?
a-i-neun a-jik eops-eo-se-yo?

김현준: 네, 아직 없어요.
ne, a-jik eops-eo-yo.
Lesson 2: Asking about Someone & Talking about Yourself

영문번역 English Translation

(1)
Lee: Excuse me. May I have your name, please?
Kim: My name is Hyeon-Jun Kim. May I have your name, please?
Lee: My name is Jeong-Ho Lee. Excuse me, but do you mind if I ask what do you do for living?
Kim: I am working at IBM. I am a computer engineer. What do you do for living, Mr. Lee?
Lee: I am still a student. I am attending medical school.

(2)
Kim: Where is your home, Jeong-Ho?
Lee: It's in San Diego. Where is your home, Hyeong-Jun?
Lee: Are you Korean, then?
Kim: Yes, I am. How about you, Jeong-Ho?
Lee: I am Korean-American. I was born in Michigan.

(3)
Kim: Excuse me. How old are you this year, Jeong-Ho?
Lee: I am thirty-two.
Kim: Ah, then we are the same age. I am also thirty-two.
Lee: Is it? Then when is your birthday?
Kim: It's in April.
Lee: Ah, is that so? Then you are a little older than I am. I was born in July.

(4)
Kim: Are you married, Jeong-Ho?
Lee: No, I am still single. How about you, Hyeon-Jun?
Kim: I got married last year.
Lee: How many people are in your family, then?
Kim: My wife and I, there are only two.
Lee: Do you have children yet?
Kim: No, not yet.

여취 Vocabulary

Nouns and Pronouns

4월 sa-wol
7월 생 chil-wol-saeng
가족 ga-jok
댁 daek
d등갑 dong-gap
d들 dul
미국 시민 mi-guk-si-min
미시간 mi-si-gan
샌디 에이고 saen-di-e-i-go
생일 saeng-il
서른 투 seo-reun-dul
수원 su-won
아이 a-i
연세 yeon-se
올해 ol-hae
작년 jang-nyeon
집사람 jip-sa-ram
한국 본 han-guk-bun
한국 가 han-guk-gye

Verbs

결혼하다 gyeol-hon-ha-da
to get married
그렇다 geu-reo-ta
to be more
많다 man-ta
to live
둘다 sal-da
not to exist, not to have
없다 eup-da
to come
오다 o-da
to be born
t하다 ha-da
to do
문법 Grammar

(1) The Possessive Particle ~의 (ui)

The possessive particle ~의 (generally pronounced like 에 [e]) indicates ownership and comes after the possessive noun, like “’s” in English. The noun that is possessed immediately follows. For example:

한국의 대통령 → 한국의 대통령
han-guk ui dae-tong-nyeong han-gug-e dae-tong-nyeong
Korea (part.) president Korea’s president / the President of Korea

However, ~의 is generally only used in written Korean. Most Korean speakers drop it in conversation. One only tends to hear it when the possessor and possessed both refer to abstract concepts. In other words, when someone says, for example, “Michael’s wallet” in Korean, one will hear 마이클의 지갑 (ma-i-keul-ji-gap) instead of 마이클의 지갑 (ma-i-keul-e ji-gap).

(2) The Time Particle ~에 (e)

The particle ~에 is used when referring to the time of day, the days of the week, and the months of the year. It immediately follows the time word or phrase it follows, e.g.

일요일에 il-yo-il-e on Sundays
주말에 ju-mal-e on the weekend
12시에 yeol-ttu-si-e at 12:00
Many time-related words and phrases do not use 았어요. These include:

오늘 o-neul  today
어제 eo-je  yesterday
그제 geu-je  the day before yesterday
내일 nae-il  tomorrow
모레 mo-re  the day after tomorrow
매일 mae-il  every day
매주 mae-ju  every week
매달 mae-dal  every month
매년 mae-nyeon  every year

(3) The Dictionary Form of Verbs (verb stem + 다 da)

Verbs in Korean consist of both a stem and an ending. The ending changes based on the form of the verb used. The dictionary form of verbs ends in 다 (da), creating the equivalent of the English infinitive, e.g.

이다 i-da  to be
아니다 a-ni-da  to not be
알다 al-da  to know
좋다 jo-ta  to be good
넓다 neolp-da  to be wide

The 다 has no meaning other than its use in the dictionary form.

(4) The Polite Ending 았어요 (a-yo)

The polite ending is the most commonly used ending in conversational Korean. However, there are several variations depending on the stem. In the examples below, which are taken from the verbs listed in (3) immediately above, one begins with the dictionary form of the verb. The 다 ending is then dropped so that only the stem remains. The polite form of the verb is then created by adding the appropriate ending to the verb stem. The rules governing the appropriate ending for a particular stem are as follows:

(1) Use 았어요 (a-yo) when the last vowel of the stem is either 아 (a) or 오 (o), e.g.

알다  →  알  →  알아요
좋다  →  좋  →  좋아요

(2) Use 았어요 for all other stems, e.g.

먹다  →  먹  →  먹어요
nested  →  넣  →  넣어요

(3) Some exceptions:

이다  →  이  →  이어요
아니다  →  아니  →  아니어요
하다  →  하  →  해요
An honorific form of the polite ending is -(으)세요 ([e]u-se-yo), which is a combination of the honorific marker -(으)시 ([e]u-si) and the polite ending -(으)요 (eo-yo). The honorific form has two uses. The first is to show respect for the person being talked about, e.g.

이선생님은 좋은 선생님이세요.
(i-seon-saeng-nim-eun jo-eun seon-saeng-nim-i-se-yo)
Mr. Lee is a good teacher.

The second is to show respect towards a person when asking he or she to do something, including answering a question. For example:

안녕하세요? 여기 앉으세요. 요즘 어떻게 지내세요?
(an-nyeong-ha-se-yo? yeo-geo an-jeu-se-yo. yo-jeum eo-tto-ke ji-nae-se-yo?)
Hello. Please sit here. How are you doing these days?

(5) The Past Tense of Verbs

Verbs in the past tense use the past tense markers -(으)었(으)래 (at/eot), which are placed between the verb stem and the sentence endings such as the one used in the polite form. The marker -(으)었(으)래 is used when the stem ends in 아 (a) or 오 (o). The marker -(으)았(으)래 is used with all other verbs. Contractions are formed after the marker is added. The examples below show how to create the past tense in the polite form:

- to go: 가다 ga-da → 가요 ga-yo → 가 +았+어요 → 가셨어요 gass-eo-yo (went)
- to be: 이다 i-da → 이어요 i-e-yo → 이 +았+어요 → 이셨어요 i-eoss-eo-yo (was)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Dictionary Form</th>
<th>-아/이요</th>
<th>-았/었어요</th>
<th>-(으)시요</th>
<th>-(으)셨어요</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(polite)</td>
<td>(polite) present</td>
<td>(polite) past</td>
<td>(hon.) present</td>
<td>(hon.) past</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>값다 to catch</td>
<td>값아요</td>
<td>값였어요</td>
<td>값으써요</td>
<td>값으셨어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jab-da</td>
<td>jab-a-yo</td>
<td>jab-ass-eo-yo</td>
<td>jab-eo-se-yo</td>
<td>jab-eo-syess-eo-yo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>섞다 to mix</td>
<td>섞어요</td>
<td>섞였어요</td>
<td>섞으써요</td>
<td>섞으셨어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>seok-da</td>
<td>seok-k-eo-yo</td>
<td>seokk-eoss-eo-yo</td>
<td>seokk-eo-se-yo</td>
<td>seokk-eo-syess-eo-yo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>가다 to go</td>
<td>가어요</td>
<td>가였어요</td>
<td>가으써요</td>
<td>가으셨어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ga-da</td>
<td>ga-yo</td>
<td>gass-yo</td>
<td>ga-se-yo</td>
<td>ga-seoss-eo-yo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>서다 to stop</td>
<td>서어요</td>
<td>서였어요</td>
<td>서으써요</td>
<td>서으셨어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>seo-da</td>
<td>seo-eo-yo</td>
<td>seooss-eo-yo</td>
<td>seoss-eo-yo</td>
<td>seoss-eoss-eo-yo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>오다 to come</td>
<td>오어요</td>
<td>오였어요</td>
<td>오으써요</td>
<td>오으셨어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>o-da</td>
<td>o-yo</td>
<td>wass-yo</td>
<td>o-se-yo</td>
<td>o-seoss-eo-yo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>주다 to give</td>
<td>주어요</td>
<td>주였어요</td>
<td>주으써요</td>
<td>주으셨어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ju-da</td>
<td>ju-yo</td>
<td>juoss-yo</td>
<td>ju-se-yo</td>
<td>ju-seoss-eo-yo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>바쁘다 to be busy</td>
<td>바뻐요</td>
<td>바뻐였어요</td>
<td>바뿐써요</td>
<td>바뿐으셨어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ba-ppeu-da</td>
<td>ba-pp-eo-yo</td>
<td>ba-pp-eoss-eo-yo</td>
<td>ba-pp-eo-se-yo</td>
<td>ba-pp-eo-syess-eo-yo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>예쁘다 to be pretty</td>
<td>예뻐요</td>
<td>예뻐였어요</td>
<td>예뿐써요</td>
<td>예뿐으셨어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>지내다 to spend time</td>
<td>지내요</td>
<td>지내였어요</td>
<td>지내써요</td>
<td>지내으셨어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ji-nae-da</td>
<td>ji-nae-yo</td>
<td>ji-naeoss-eo-yo</td>
<td>ji-nae-se-yo</td>
<td>ji-nae-seoss-eo-yo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>하다 to do</td>
<td>하어요</td>
<td>하였어요</td>
<td>하으써요</td>
<td>하으셨어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ha-da</td>
<td>ha-yo</td>
<td>haess-eo-yo</td>
<td>ha-se-yo</td>
<td>ha-seoss-eo-yo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이다 to be</td>
<td>이어요</td>
<td>이였어요</td>
<td>이으써요</td>
<td>이으셨어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i-da</td>
<td>i-e-yo</td>
<td>i-eoss-eo-yo</td>
<td>i-se-yo</td>
<td>i-seoss-eo-yo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>아니다 not to be</td>
<td>아니어요</td>
<td>아니였어요</td>
<td>아니으써요</td>
<td>아니으셨어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a-ni-da</td>
<td>a-ni-e-yo</td>
<td>a-ni-eoss-eo-yo</td>
<td>a-ni-se-yo</td>
<td>a-ni-seoss-eo-yo</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
(6) Answering Yes or No Questions

To answer yes to a yes-or-no question in the polite mode, one says 내 (ne), which is followed by the extended response. To answer yes in the plain and intimate modes, one says 읽 (eung) followed by the extended response. An example in the polite mode:

한국 사람이세요? → 내, 한국 사람이세요.
(han-guk-sa-ram-i-se-yo?) (ne, han-guk-sa-ram-i-se-yo.)
Are you a Korean?

Yes, I am a Korean.

To answer no to a yes-or-no question in the polite mode, one says 아니오 (a-ni-o) or, followed by the extended reply. The word 아니 (a-ni) is used in the plain and intimate modes. An example in the polite mode:

한국 사람이세요? → 아니오, 한국 사람이 아니예요.
(han-guk-sa-ram-i-se-yo?) (a-ni-o, han-guk-sa-ram-i
a-ni-e-yo.)
Are you a Korean?

No, I am not a Korean.

One can precede a negative reply with 네 or a positive reply with 아니오 if the question is asked using the negative form. In these instances, the English equivalents would be closer to “Yes, that’s correct,” or “No, that’s incorrect.” For example:

한국 사람이 아니세요? → 네, 한국 사람이 아니예요.
(han-guk-sa-ram-i a-ni-se-yo?) (nc, han-guk-sa-ram-i a-ni-e-yo.)
 Aren’t you/You aren’t a Korean?

Yes, that’s correct, I am not a Korean.

→ 아니오, 한국 사람이 아니예요.
(a-ni-o, han-guk-sa-ram-i-e-yo.)
No, that’s incorrect, I am a Korean.

(7) The Expression - сотрудник (gun-yo)

The expression - сотрудник at the end of a statement is an equivalent of an English exclamation point. It is used to indicate that the speaker has realized something for the first time. The ending - 너요 (ne-yo) can be used this way as well. Examples:

저하고 동갑이시군요. 저하고 동갑이시네요.
(jeo-ha-go dong-gab-i-si-gun-yo.) (jeo-ha-go dong-gab-i-si-ne-yo.)
We are the same age! We are the same age!

(8) The Sentence Ending - 음/요? (eun-yo/neun-yo?)

The sentence endings - 음/요? (eun-yo/neun-yo?) are best translated as “How about...?” or “What about...?” The ending 음 is used when the noun ends in a vowel, e.g.

가족 음요?
(ga-jog-eun-yo?)
How about your family?

The ending -요 is used when the noun ends in a consonant, e.g.

정호석 네요?
(jeong-ho-sse-neun-yo?)
How about Jeong-Ho?

The ~요 ending can also be used for such phrases as 주말에는 요?
(ju-mal-e-neun-yo?) / How about during the weekend?
## Further Study

(1) Naming a Language and Nationality/Ethnicity

The Korean name for a country’s language is generally created by taking the name of the country and adding the suffix ～어 (eo). The word for a country’s nationality or ethnicity is created in the plain form by adding the suffix ～인 (in). The chart below illustrates these conversions. Note that, in some instances, the language and nationality listed are the proper ones, not derivations of the country’s name.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Country Name</th>
<th>Language Name</th>
<th>Plain Form</th>
<th>Formal Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>호주</td>
<td>영어</td>
<td>호주 사람</td>
<td>호주인</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Australia</td>
<td>English</td>
<td>호주 sa-rang</td>
<td>호주인</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>캐나다</td>
<td>영어</td>
<td>캐나다 사람</td>
<td>캐나다인</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Canada</td>
<td>English</td>
<td>캐나다 sa-rang</td>
<td>캐나다인</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>중국</td>
<td>중국어</td>
<td>중국 사람</td>
<td>중국인</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>China</td>
<td>Chinese</td>
<td>중국 sa-rang</td>
<td>Chinese</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>영국</td>
<td>영어</td>
<td>영국 사람</td>
<td>영국인</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>England</td>
<td>English</td>
<td>영국 sa-rang</td>
<td>British</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>프랑스</td>
<td>프랑스어</td>
<td>프랑스 사람</td>
<td>프랑스인</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>France</td>
<td>French</td>
<td>프랑스 sa-rang</td>
<td>French</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>러시아</td>
<td>러시아어</td>
<td>러시아 사람</td>
<td>러시아인</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Russia</td>
<td>Russian</td>
<td>러시아 sa-rang</td>
<td>Russian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>스페인</td>
<td>스페인어</td>
<td>스페인 사람</td>
<td>스페인인</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spain</td>
<td>Spanish</td>
<td>스페인 sa-rang</td>
<td>Spanish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>미국</td>
<td>영어</td>
<td>미국 사람</td>
<td>미국인</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>United States</td>
<td>English</td>
<td>미국 sa-rang</td>
<td>American</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
(2) The Months of the Year

1월 (일월) il-wol
2월 (이월) i-wol
3월 (삼월) sam-wol
4월 (사월) sa-wol
5월 (오월) o-wol
6월 (유월) yu-wol
7월 (칠월) chil-wol
8월 (팔월) pal-wol
9월 (구월) gu-wol
10월 (시월) si-wol
11월 (십일월) sib-il-wol
12월 (십이월) sib-i-wol

January
February
March
April
May
June
July
August
September
October
November
December

(3) Years

제작년 jae-jang-nyeon
작년 jang-nyeon
올해 ol-hae
고년 geum-nyeon
내년 nae-nyeon
내후년 nea-hu-nyeon

the year before last year
last year
this year
next year
the year after next year

(4) Family Terms

가족 ga-jok
실구 sik-gu
집 jip
댁 daek
할아버지 hal-a-beo-ji
할머니 hal-meo-ni
아버지 a-beo-ji
어머니 eo-meo-ni

family, family members (formal)
family, family members (casual)
house
house (hon.)
grandfather
grandmother
father
mother

혈 hyeong
오빠 o-ppa
누나 nu-na

man's older brother
woman's older brother
man's older sister

언니 eon-ni
남동생 nam-dong-saeng
여동생 yeo-dong-saeng
남편 nam-pyeon

woman's older sister
younger brother
younger sister
husband

아내 a-nae
집사람 jip-sa-ram
아들 a-deul
딸 ttal

wife
wife
son
daughter
Lesson 2: Asking about Someone & Talking about Yourself

(3) Husband and Wife

When referring to one’s own spouse, one uses a different word than when referring to someone else’s. The appropriate words are as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>남편 nam-pyeon</td>
<td>one’s own husband</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>아내 a-nae</td>
<td>one’s own wife</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>집사람 jip-sa-ram</td>
<td>another’s husband</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>바깥 어른 ba-kkat-eo-reun</td>
<td>another’s wife</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>주인어른 ju-in-eo-reun</td>
<td>another’s wife</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>부인 bu-in</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>사모님 sa-mo-nim</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(2) First-Person Possessive Pronouns and Korean Collectivism

The Korean equivalent of the English possessive pronoun “my” is 내 (nae) in the plain form and 제 (je) in the formal and deferential forms. However, one must keep in mind that Koreans consider things such as their country, school, family, and home as collective possessions. For these, the equivalent of the English “our” will always be used. In the plain form, this is 우리 (u-ri). In the formal and deferential forms, it is 저희 (jeo-hui).

The sense of a family member being a collective possession can extend even to one’s wife or husband. The equivalent of “my wife” is 우리 집사람 (u-ri jip-sa-ram), while the equivalent of my husband is 우리 남편 (u-ri nam-pyeon).
Lesson 2: Asking about Someone & Talking about Yourself

4. Please write a paragraph introducing yourself (your name, hometown/nationality, age/birthday, family, etc.).

3. Please translate the following into Korean:

(1) I am a Korean-American.
(2) I was born in Michigan.
(3) I am from Canada.
(4) I was born in July.
(5) I have no brother and sister.
Lesson 3: Asking Directions
표현 Patterns

이 근처에 대한은행이 어디 있습니까?
i geun-cheo-e dae-han-eun-haeng-i eo-di it-seum-ni-kka?
Where is Dae-Han Bank around here?

이 길로 똑바로 가세요.
i gil-lo tok-ba-ro ga-se-yo.
Go straight down this street.

신호등을 건너서 오른쪽으로 쪽 가세요.
Cross (at) the traffic signal, turn right, and go straight.

길 건너편에 대한은행이 있어요.
gil geon-neo-pyone-e dae-han-eun-haeng-i iss-eo-yo.
Dae-Han Bank is (on) across the street.

여기에서 대한은행까지 얼마나 가깝니까?
yeo-gi-e-seo dae-han-eun-haeng-kka-ji meom-ni-kka?
Is it far from here to Dae-Han Bank?

여기에서 대한은행까지 시간이 얼마나 걸립니까?
yeo-gi-e-seo dae-han-eun-haeng-kka-ji si-gan-i eol-ma-na
geol-lim-ni-kka?
How long does it take from here to Dae-Han Bank?

별로 안 멀어요.
byeol-lo an meol-eo-yo.
It's not very far.

절어서 한 20분쯤 걸릴 거예요.
geol-eo-se han i-sip-bun-jjum geol-lil geo-ye-yo.
It will take about 20 minutes by walking.

Lesson 3: Asking Directions

이 근처에서 제일 가까운 커피숍이 어디 있습니까?
i geun-cheo-e-seo je-il ga-kka-un keo-pi-syob-i eo-di it-seum-ni-kka?
Where is the nearest coffee shop around here (this area)?

회사 옆에 제일빌딩 아시지요?
hoe-sa yeop-e je-il-bil-ding a-si-ji-yo?
You know the Je-il building next to (our) company, right?

제일빌딩 바로 뒤에 한영서점 아시죠?
je-il-bil-ding barro dwi-e han-yeong-seo-jeom a-si-jyo?
You know Han-Yeong Bookstore right behind the Je-il building, right?

그 빌딩 지하에 커피숍이 하나 있어요.
geu bil-динg ji-ha-e keo-pi-syob-i ha-na iss-eo-yo.
There is a coffee shop in the basement of the building.

한영서점 안에도 하나 있어요.
han-yeong-seo-jeom an-e-do ha-na iss-eo-yo.
There is also one inside Han-Yeong Bookstore.

그 빌딩은 요즘 공사중이라서 너무 복잡해요.
geu bil-динg-eun yo-jeum gong-sa-jung-i-ra-seo neo-mu
bok-ja-pae-seo-yo.
That building is under construction these days, so it's too crowded.

벽에 이상한 상각형하고 사각형 타일이 붙은 가게 말이죠?
byeog-e i-sang-han sam-ga-kyeong-ha-go sa-ga-kyeong ta-il-i but-
eun ga-ge mal-i-jyo?
You mean the store where strange-looking triangle and square tiles are attached to the wall, right?

이사 잘 하셨어요?
i-sa jal ha-syeoss-eo-yo?
Did your move go well? (lit. Did you move well?)
지난 주 금요일에 이사를하고 주말 동안 대충 정리했어요.
ji-nal ju geun-yo-il-e i-sa-ha-go ju-mal ttong-an dae-chung
jeong-ri-haes-ss-eo-yo.
I moved last Friday and almost finished putting things in order
during the weekend.

고생 많이 하셨군요.
go-saeng man-I ha-syeot-gun-ya.
You worked hard. (lit. You did a hard work.)

새로 이사하신 집은 어디세요?
sae-ro i-sa-ha-sin jib-eun eo-di-se-yo?
Where is the house you just (lit. newly) moved into?

병원에서 아주 가까워요.
byeong-won-e-seo a-ju ga-kka-wo-yo.
It is very close to the hospital (where I work).

한 506미터쯤 걸리에요.
han o-baeng-mi-teoiujeum doel kkeo-ye-yo.
It is about 500 meters (from there).

저희 병원 근처에 서신 아파트 아세요?
jeo-hi byeong-won geun-cheo-e seo-sin a-pa-teu a-se-yo?
Do you know the Seo-Sin Apartment Complex near my hospital?

그 아파트 얼마 전에 새로 지었지요?
geu a-pa-teu col-ma-jeon-e sae-ro ji-eot-ji-yo?
That apartment complex was recently built a (short) while ago,
right?

잘 됐네요.
jal dwaen-ne-yo.
That's good (for you).

Lesson 3: Asking Directions

아파트 단지 안에 상가가 있어서 아주 편리해요.
a-pa-teu dan-ji an-e sang-ga-ga iss-eo-seo a-ju pyeol-li-hae-yo.
There is a shopping center inside the apartment complex, so it is
very convenient.
대화 Model Conversations

(1)
김현준: 설레지만 이 근처에 대한행이 어디 있습니까?
sil-lye-ji-man i geun-cheo-e dae-han-eun-haeng-i eo-di it-seum-ni-kka?
행인: 이 길로 독바로 가세요. 그리고 신호등을 건너서 오른쪽으로 쪽 가세요. 그런 길 건너편에 대한행이 있어요.
김현준: 감사합니다. 그런데 여기에서 대한행까지 얼마나요? 시간이 얼마나 걸립니까?
행인: 별로 안 멀어요. 걸어서 한 20분쯤 걸릴 거예요.
byeol-lo an meol-eo-yo. geol-eo-seo han i-sip-bun jjeum geol-lil kkeo-ye-yo.
김현준: 아, 알겠습니다. 감사합니다.

(2)
김현준: 성인써, 이 근처에서 재일 가까운 커피숍이 어디 있습니까?
seong-min-ssi, i geun-cheo-e-seo je-il ga-kka-un keo-pi-syob-i eo-di it-seum-ni-kka?
박성민: 회사 앞에 재일빌딩 아시지요? 파란색 건물이요. 그 빌딩 지하에 커피숍이 하나 있어요.

김현준: 그런 저도 알아요. 그런데 그 빌딩은 노른 공사중이 라서 너무 복잡해서요.
박성민: 그렇군요. 그럼 재일빌딩 바로 뒤에 한영서점 이시죠? 한영서점 안에도 하나 있어요.
김현준: 아, 볼에 이상한 상각형하고 사각형 타일이 붙은 가게 일이죠?
a, byeog-e i-sang-han sam-ga-kyeong-ha-go sa-gak-kyeong ta-il-i but-eun ga-ge mal-i-jyo?
박성민: 네, 맞아요.
ne, maj-a-yo.

(3)
최태민: 정호씨, 이사 다 하셨어요?
jeong-ho-ssi, i-sa da ha-syeoss-eo-yo?
이정호: 네, 지난 주 금요일에 이사하고 주말 동안 대충 정리 했어요.
ne, ji-nan ju geun-yo-il-e i-sa-ha-go ju-mal t tong-an dae-chung jeong-ri-haess-eo-yo.
최태민: 고생 많이 하셨군요. 그런데 새로 이사하신 집은 어디세요?
go-saeng man-i ha-syeot-gun-yo. geu-reon-de sae-ro i-sa-ha-sin jib-eun eo-di-se-yo?
이정호: 저희 별원에서 아주 가까워요. 한 500미터쯤 될 거예요. 별원 근처에 서신 아파트 아세요?
byeong-won geun-cheo-e seo-sin a-pa-teu a-se-yo?
영문번역 English Translation

(1)
Kim: Excuse me, where is the Dae-Han Bank around here?
Pedestrian: Go straight down this road. And cross at the signal light, turn right, and go straight. The Dae-Han Bank is right across the street.
Kim: Thank you. By the way, is the Dae-Han Bank far from here? How much time will it take to get there?
Pedestrian: It's not very far. It should take about 20 minutes by walking.
Kim: Ah, I see. Thank you.

(2)
Kim: Seong-Min, where is the closest coffee shop near here?
Park: You know the Je-II building next to our office, right? I mean the blue colored building. There is a coffee shop in the basement of the building.
Kim: I know that one. But that building has had construction these past few days, so it is too crowded.
Park: That's right... Then you know the Han-Yeong Bookstore right behind the Je-II building, right? There is one inside the Han-Yeong Bookstore, too.
Kim: Ah, you mean the store where the wall is covered with strange-looking triangle and square tiles, right?
Park: Yes, that's right.

(3)
Choi: Jeong-Ho, did your move go well?
Lee: Yes, I moved last Friday and almost finished putting things in order during the weekend.
Choi: You did a lot of hard work. By the way, where is the new house you moved to?
Lee: It is very close to the hospital where I work. It is about 500 meters from there. Do you know the Seo-Sin Apartment Complex near the hospital?

Choi: Yes, I know it. That apartment complex was recently built a short while ago, right? That’s good for you.

Lee: Yes. And there is a shopping center inside the apartment complex, so it is very convenient.

여취 Vocabulary

Nouns / Pronouns

20분从中 sip-bun-ijeum
500미터중 o-bang-mi-teo-ijeum
가게 ga-ge
인너편 geon-neo-pyeon
건물 geon-mul
고생 go-saeng
공사 중 gong-sa-jung
근처 geun-choe
금요일 geum-yo-il
길 gil
단지 dan-ji
대한은행 dae-han-eun-haeng
바로 뒤 ba-ro dwi
벽 byeok
병원 byeong-won
사각형 sa-ga-kyeong
삼각형 sam-ga-kyeong
상가 sang-ga
서신아파트 seo-sin-a-pa-teu
시간 si-gan
신호등 sin-ho-deung
아파트 a-pa-teu
안 an
열마 전 col-ma jeon
여기 yeo-gi
옆 yeop
오른쪽 o-reun-ijok
오른쪽 yo-jeum
아사 i-sa
제일빌딩 je-il-bil-ding

about 20 minutes
about 500 meters
store, shop
the other side of a street
building
hard work
on the construction
near
Friday
street, road
(apartment) complex
Dae-Han Bank
right behind
wall
hospital
square
triangle
mall, shopping center
Seo-Sin Apartment
time, hour
traffic signal
apartment (complex)
inside
a while ago
here
beside
right side
these days
moving
Je-II Building
Verbs

가깝다 ga-kkap-da  
감사하다 gam-sa-ha-da  
건너다 geon-neo-da  
걸리다 geol-li-da  
맞다 mat-da  
열다 meol-da  
복잡하다 bok-ja-pa-da  
所在地 but-da  
있다 al-da  
이사하다 i-sa-ha-da  
이상하다 i-sang-ha-da  
있다 it-da  
сол 데다 jal doe-da  
정리하다 jeong-ri-ha-da  
Jeste jin-da  
편리하다 pyeol-li-ha-da  

Adverbs / Prepositions / Conjunctions

걸어서 geol-eo-seo  
그 geu  
그런데 geu-reon-de  
그리고 geu-ri-go  
너무 neo-mu  
대충 dae-chung  
 똑바로 tok-ba-ro  
많이 man-i  
별로 byeol-lo  
새로 sae-ro  
 아주 a-ju  
안 an  
어디 eo-di  
 얼마나 eol-ma-na  
이 i  
잘 jal  
저희 jeo-hi  
제일 je-il  
쪽 jiuk  
한 han  

by walking  
that  
but  
and  
to much  
roughly  
straight  
a lot  
not particularly  
newly  
very, so  
not  
where  
how much/many/long  
this  
well  
our (hom.)  
the most  
straight  
approximately
문법 Grammar

(1) Demonstrative Expressions

The demonstrative pronouns 이 (i), 그 (geu), and 저 (jeo) are, respectively, the equivalents of the English “this,” “that,” and “that over there.” When 이 appears before a word, the object denoted by that word is near the speaker. When 그 appears before a word, the object indicated is near the person being spoken to. When 저 appears before a word, the object indicated is something not near either person.

Once the object indicated has been mentioned once, one does not say the word for it again. One uses the word 것 (geot) instead. This is the Korean equivalent for the English word “thing.” If one used 이 with the original noun, one says 이것은 from that point on. Likewise, one would say 그것은 for an item referred to with 그, and 저것 for something referred to with 저.

The shortened word 거 (geo) may be used instead of 것 in casual conversation. The word 거 may form a contraction with the following particle if that particle begins with a vowel. These contractions are shown below:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Full Form</th>
<th>Contracted Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>이것/그것/저것</td>
<td>이거/그거/저거</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i-geo/geu-geo/jeo-geo</td>
<td>i-geo/geu-geo/jeo-geo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이것/그것/저것 + 음</td>
<td>이거/그거/저거 + 음</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(topic particle)</td>
<td>i-geo/geu-geo/jeo-geo + eun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i-geo/geu-geo/jeo-geo + eun</td>
<td>i-geo/geu-geo/jeo-geo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이것/그것/저것 + 음</td>
<td>이거/그거/저거 + 음</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(object particle)</td>
<td>i-geo/geu-geo/jeo-geo + eul</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i-geo/geu-geo/jeo-geo + eul</td>
<td>i-geo/geu-geo/jeo-geo</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(2) The Adverbial Pronouns 여기, 거기, and 저기

The Korean equivalents of “here,” “there,” and “over there,” are, respectively, 여기 (yoeo-gi), 거기 (jeo-gi), and 저기 (geo-gi). The word 여기 is used when indicating a location near oneself. The word 거기 is used when indicating a location near the person one is speaking to. The word 저기 is used when indicating a location that is not near either oneself or the person to whom one is speaking.

The use of the locative particle 에 (e), the equivalent of “at,” with these words is optional. For example, one may say 여기서 (yoeo-gi-seo) instead of 여기에서 (yoeo-gi-eseo).

(2) The Pattern ~부터 ~까지 vs. ~에서 ~까지

The pattern ~부터 ~까지 (bu-teo ... kka-ji) is used when talking about a period of time with a distinct beginning and end. It is the equivalent of the English pattern “from [a beginning time] to [an ending time].” For example, consider the second part of this exchange:

매일 직장에 나가십니까?
(mae-il jik-jang-e na-ga-sim-ni-kka?)
Do you go to work everyday?

아니요, 월요일부터 금요일까지 나가고 토요일과 일요일은 싫습니다.
(a-ni-o, wol-yo-il-bu-teo geum-yo-il-kka-ji-man na-ga-go to-yo-il-gwa il-yo-il-eun swim-ni-da.)
No, I go to work from Monday to Friday, and take a rest on Saturday and Sunday.
The phrase ework-ih-buteo yeum-ih-ilkka-jih-man means “from Monday to Friday.” Note its use of this pattern.

Another “from…to…” pattern is 염서-까지 (e-seo…kka-ji). This is used when the beginning and ending points are locations. Consider the first half of this exchange:

L.A에서 서울까지 비행기로 시간이 얼마나 걸립니까?
(el-e-i-e-seo seo-ul-kka-ji bi-haeng-gi-ro si-gan-i eol-ma-na
geol-lim-ni-kka?)

How long does it take from L.A. to Seoul by airplane?

한 여행시간 걸려요.
(han yeo-tu-si-gan-jjeum geol-lyeo-yo.)
It takes about 12 hours.

The phrase 염서-서울까지 (el-e-i-e-seo seo-ul-kka-ji) means “from L.A. to Seoul.” Again, note the use of the pattern.

(3) The future (prospective) tense of verbs

The pattern [Verb] + -(으)ㄹ 거예요 is used to indicate that one is probably going to do something. An example is the second half of this exchange:

주말에 뭐 할 거예요?
(ju-mal-e mwo hal kkeo-ye-yo?)
What are you going to do the on weekend?

극장에 갈 거예요.
(geuk-jang-e gal kkeo-ye-yo.)
I will probably go to the movie theater.

When the verb ends in a consonant, use -(으)ㄹ 거예요. When it ends in a vowel, use -(으)ㄹ 거예요.

(4) Irregular Verbs

With irregular verbs, the final sound of the verb stem changes when affixed to certain suffixes. There are nine types.

מיל—Irregular Verbs

Verbs with stems that end in =are =irregular verbs. Examples include 들다 (deut-da) / “to listen,” 걸다 (geot-da) / “to walk,” and 올다 (mut-da) / “to ask.”

With =irregular verbs, the = becomes 는 when followed by a vowel, as it does in the polite form:

들다 (deut-da) → 들 (deut) + 음요 (co-yo) → 들으세요 (deul-eo-yo)
걸다 (goet-da) → 걸 (geot) + 음요 (co-yo) → 걸으세요 (geol-eo-yo)
옮다 (mut-da) → 옮 (mut) + 음요 (co-yo) → 옮으세요 (mul-eo-yo)

들 다 (deut-da) → 들 (deut) + 오세요 (eu-se-yo) → 들으세요
(deul-eu-se-yo)
걸다 (goet-da) → 걸 (geot) + 오세요 (eu-se-yo) → 걸으세요
(geol-eu-se-yo)
옮 다 (mut-da) → 옮 (mut) + 오세요 (eu-se-yo) → 옮으세요
(mul-eu-se-yo)

밀—Irregular Verbs

Verbs with stems that end in =are =irregular verbs. Examples include 가깝다 (ga-kkap-da) / “to be close,” 어려다 (eo-reop-da) / “to be difficult,” and 무겁다 (mu-geop-da) / “to be heavy.”
Lesson 3: Asking Directions

쓰다 (sseu-da) → 쓰 (sseu) + 어요 (eo-yo) → 써요 (sseo-yo)
크다 (keu-da) → 크 (keu) + 어요 (eo-yo) → 크요 (kkeo-yo)
아프다 (a-peu-da) → 아프 (a-peu) + 어요 (eo-yo) → 아파요 (a-pa-yo)
예쁘다 (ye-ppeu-da) → 예쁘 (ye-ppeu) + 어요 (eo-yo) → 예쁘요 (ye-ppeo-yo)

Note that when the final syllable of the stem is 어요 as in 아프요, 예쁘요, the contraction syllable 팔 (pa) is formed with 어. Likewise, the contraction syllable 팔 (pae) is formed when the final syllable of the stem is 봐 (pae) is formed with 어. When the second to the final syllable vowel in a verb stem is 여, 오, or 어, the sentence ending 어요 is used, and 어요 is used when other vowels come in the same position.

 여러분 ---Irregular Verbs

Verbs with stems that end in include 쓰다 (jit-da) / “to build,” 빗다 (but-da) / “to pour,” and 잡다 (it-da) / “to connect.”

When the suffix begins with a vowel, as in the polite form, the becomes dropped.

쓰다 (sseu-da) → 써 (sseu) + 어요 (eo-yo) → 써어요 (sseo-yo)
크다 (keu-da) → 크 (keu) + 어요 (eo-yo) → 크요 (kkeo-yo)
아프다 (a-peu-da) → 아프 (a-peu) + 어요 (eo-yo) → 아파요 (a-pa-yo)
예쁘다 (ye-ppeu-da) → 예쁘 (ye-ppeu) + 어요 (eo-yo) → 예쁘요 (ye-ppeo-yo)

Note that when the final syllable of the stem is 어요 as in 아프요, 예쁘요, the contraction syllable 팔 (pa) is formed with 어. Likewise, the contraction syllable 팔 (pae) is formed when the final syllable of the stem is 봐 (pae) is formed with 어. When the second to the final syllable vowel in a verb stem is 여, 오, or 어, the sentence ending 어요 is used, and 어요 is used when other vowels come in the same position.

 여러분 ---Irregular Verbs

Verbs with stems that end in include 돌다 (dol-da) / “to turn,” 둔 다 (neul-da) / “to play,” and 알다 (al-da) / “to know.” If the suffix begins with the consonants - 닥, - 닫, or - 닫, the is dropped.

An example of this conversion in question form:
돌다 (dol-da) → 돌 (dol) + 네 닥 (ni-kka) → 네 닥 (do-ni-kka)

An example in the deferential statement form:
돌다 (dol-da) → 돌 (dol) + 네 닥 (p-ni-da) → 네 닥 (neup-ni-da)

An example in the polite honorific form:
알다 (al-da) → 알 (al) + 세요 (se-yo) → 아세요 (a-se-yo)
Lesson 5: Asking Directions

With these verbs, the ㅏ part of the syllable block ㅓ that ends the verb stem becomes ㅏ when the form-suffix begins with ㅓ or ㅏ. The following examples show the conversion in the polite form.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verbs</th>
<th>Conversion</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>하다 (ha-da)</td>
<td>하 (ha) + 아요 (a-yo) → 해요 (hae-yo)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>좋아하다 (jo-a-ha-da)</td>
<td>좋아하 (jo-a-ha) + 아요 (a-yo) → 좋아해요 (jo-a-hae-yo)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>살어하다 (sil-eo-ha-da)</td>
<td>살어하 (sil-eo-ha) + 아요 (a-yo) → 살어해요 (sil-eo-hae-yo)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Irregular Verbs

This class of irregular verbs relates to verbs with stems that end in ㅓ. These include 빨갛다 (pu-reu-da) / “to be blue,” 이르다 (i-reu-da) / “to be early,” and 누르다 (nu-reu-da) / “to press.” If a verb stem ends in ㅓ and is followed by the vowel ㅏ or ㅓ, then there is a ㅗ insertion before the ㅓ or ㅓ.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verbs</th>
<th>Conversion</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>빨갛다 (pu-reu-da)</td>
<td>빨 (pu-reu) + 어서 (eo-seo) → 빨러서 (pu-reu-reo-seo)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이르다 (i-reu-da)</td>
<td>이 (i-reu) + 어서 (eo-seo) → 이르러서 (i-reu-reo-seo)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>누르다 (nu-reu-da)</td>
<td>누르 (nu-reu) + 어서 (eo-seo) → 누러서 (nu-reu-reo-seo)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Verbs that end in ㅗ. These include 하다 (ha-da) / “to do,” 좋아하다 (jo-a-ha-da) / “to like,” and 살어하다 (sil-eo-ha-da) / “to dislike.”

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verbs</th>
<th>Conversion</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>하다 (ha-da)</td>
<td>하 (ha) + 아요 (a-yo) → 해요 (hae-yo)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>좋아하다 (jo-a-ha-da)</td>
<td>좋아하 (jo-a-ha) + 아요 (a-yo) → 좋아해요 (jo-a-hae-yo)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>살어하다 (sil-eo-ha-da)</td>
<td>살어하 (sil-eo-ha) + 아요 (a-yo) → 살어해요 (sil-eo-hae-yo)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Irregular Verbs

This class of irregular verbs relates to verbs with stems that end in ㅗ. They include 빨갛다 (ppal-ga-ta) / “to be red,” 하 والا (ha-ya-ta) / “to be blue,” and 까맣다 (kka-ma-ta) / “to be black.”

With these verbs, the ㅓ ending the stem is dropped if the suffix begins with ㅗ, ㅓ, or ㅓ. (These letters are the nasal consonants.)

The following example shows the sentence in the adjective-final form, in which descriptive verbs become adjectives. Here, the equivalent of the verb “to be red” becomes the equivalent of the adjective “red.”

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verbs</th>
<th>Conversion</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>빨갛다 (ppal-ga-ta)</td>
<td>빨 (ppal-ga) + ㅗ (n) → 빨간 (ppal-gan)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This example shows the sentence in the conditional form.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verbs</th>
<th>Conversion</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>하 والا (ha-ya-ta)</td>
<td>하 (ha-ya) + 연 (myeon) → 하아연 (ha-ya-myeon)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This example shows the sentence with the casual sentence ending (으)니까.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verbs</th>
<th>Conversion</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>까맣다 (kka-ma-ta)</td>
<td>까 (kka-ma) + 니까 (ni-kka) → 까따니까 (kka-ma-ni-kka)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Lesson 3: Asking Directions

오늘은 일요일이라서 회사에 안 가요.
(o-neul-eun il-yo-il-ira-seo hoe-sa-e an ga-yo.)
Since today is Sunday, I am not going to work.

If the noun ends in a vowel, 이다 becomes 라서 (ra-seo), e.g.

정호씨는 휴가에 서서 여행 갈어요.
(jeong-ho-sai-neun hyu-ga-ra-seo yeo-haeng gass-ee-yo.)
Since it’s a vacation, Jeong-Ho went traveling.

The English “because” and “since” are used interchangeably.

(6) The Adverb 별로

The adverb 별로 (byeol-lo) is the equivalent of the English “not particularly,” “not really,” and “not so much.” The verb in the sentence, if one appears, is usually negative. The following exchange highlights 별로 and its usage.

주말에 할 일이 많아요?
(ju-mal-e hal il-i man-a-yo?)
Do you have many things to do on the weekend?

아니요, 별로 없어요.
(a-ni-o, byeol-lo eops-ee-yo.)
No, not really.

(7) The Particles ~로 and ~으로

The particles ~로 (ro) and ~으로 (eu-ro) have multiple usages. The particle ~로 is used with nouns ending in a vowel or the consonant 룹. The particle ~으로 is used with nouns ending in all other consonants.
BEGINNER’S KOREAN

One meaning for ~로 and ~으로 is “by means of.” Examples:

한국말로 이야기해 보세요.  
(han-gung-mal-lo i-ya-gi-hae bo-se-yo.)  
Please speak in Korean.

한국까지 비행기로 10시간 걸려요.  
(han-guk-kka-ji bi-haeng-gi-ro yeol-ssi-gan geol-lyeo-yo.)  
It takes 10 hours to come to Korea by airplane.

In these sentences, the Korean language and an airplane are the methods by which the action is carried out.

Another meaning for the particles is “to (a place)” or “towards (a place),” as in 서울로 (seo-ul-lo) / “to Seoul,” or 은행으로 (eun-haeng-eu-ro) / “to the bank.” It is also used when giving directions, e.g.

사거리에서 오른쪽으로 가세요.  
(sa-geo-ri-e-seo o-reun-jjog-eu-ro ga-se-yo.)  
Please turn right (lit. go to the right) at the intersection.

The particle ~에 (e) also indicates “to” or “towards.” However, it is used when indicating a specific direction. The particles ~로 and ~으로 are used when the destination is more general.

Lesson 3: Asking Directions

참고학습 Further Study

Positional Words

가운데 ga-un-de  
middle  
back, behind

뒤 dwi  
underneath

밀 mit  
out, outside

박 bak / 비갈 ba-kkat  
in, inside

속 sok  
under, below, down

아래 a-rae  
in, inside

앞 ap  
front

옆 yeop  
side, nearby

위 wi  
top, above, up

(1) Names of the Colors

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Color</th>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>Adjective</th>
<th>Predicate</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>red</td>
<td>빨간색</td>
<td>빨간</td>
<td>빨개요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ppal-gan-saek</td>
<td>ppal-gan</td>
<td>ppal-gae-yo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>black</td>
<td>까만색</td>
<td>까만</td>
<td>까매요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>kka-man-saek</td>
<td>kka-man</td>
<td>kka-moe-yo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>white</td>
<td>하얀색</td>
<td>하얀</td>
<td>하매요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ha-yan-saek</td>
<td>ha-yan</td>
<td>ha-yae-yo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blue</td>
<td>파란색</td>
<td>파란</td>
<td>파래요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>pa-ran-saek</td>
<td>pa-ran</td>
<td>pa-rae-yo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yellow</td>
<td>노란색</td>
<td>노란</td>
<td>노래요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>no-ran-saek</td>
<td>no-ran</td>
<td>no-ra-yo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>green</td>
<td>초록색</td>
<td>초록색</td>
<td>초록색이에요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>cho-rok-saek</td>
<td>cho-rok-saek</td>
<td>cho-rok-saeg-i-e-yo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gray</td>
<td>회색</td>
<td>회색</td>
<td>회색이에요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>hoe-saek</td>
<td>hoe-saek</td>
<td>hoe-saeg-i-e-yo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pink</td>
<td>분홍색</td>
<td>분홍색</td>
<td>분홍색이에요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>bun-hong-saek</td>
<td>bun-hong-saek</td>
<td>bun-hong-saeg-i-e-yo</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Lesson 3: Asking Directions

(2) The Names of Shapes

타원형 ta-won-hyeong oval
원형 won-hyeong round
동그라미 dong-geu-ra-mi round
직사각형 jik-sa-ga-kyeong rectangle
정사각형 jeong-sa-ga-kyeong square
삼각형 jeong-sam-ga-kyeong triangle

(3) The Days of the Week

월요일 wol-yo-il Monday (day of the moon)
화요일 hwa-yo-il Tuesday (day of fire)
수요일 su-yo-il Wednesday (day of water)
목요일 mog-yo-il Thursday (day of the trees)
금요일 geum-yo-il Friday (day of metal)
토요일 to-yo-il Saturday (day of soil)
일요일 il-yo-il Sunday (day of the sun)

The definitions in parentheses are the literal meanings of the Korean names for the days. They are named in honor of the sun, the moon, and the Five Elements according to Chinese philosophy. The seven-day week is a Western concept adopted by Korea and other East Asian countries.
Cultural Notes

(1) 아파트 (a-pa-teu)

The Korean 아파트, from the English “apartment,” refers to the ubiquitous high-rise residential buildings in Korea. (The difference between the 아파트 and the U.S. “apartment” is that the Korean word refers to the building, not a rental unit inside.) The 아파트 are usually built in multi-building complexes that are named after the construction company, as in 현대아파트 (hyeon-daeha-pa-teu) and 삼익아파트 (sam-et-a-pa-teu). Nearly a quarter of the South Korean population lives in Seoul and the majority live in 아파트.

(2) 집들이 (jip-deul-i)

When people move into a new house, they are expected by their relatives, friends, and neighbors to have a 집들이, a housewarming party. This is especially true for newlyweds, and the party gives the bride an opportunity to demonstrate her cooking skills. Guests often bring modest gifts of soap or laundry detergent. These represent prosperity, i.e. a small amount produces a limitless amount of soap bubbles.

(3) 색깔 (saek-kkal)

The word for “color” in Korean is 색 (saek) or 색깔 (saek-kkal). The words for the different colors are used as nouns, as predicates, or as modifiers. The word 파란색 (pa-ran-saek) means “blue,” but Koreans have traditionally used it to describe things that are either blue or green. An alternative word for green is 초록색 (cho-roksaek), which literally means “grass green.”

Exercises

1. Please respond to the following:

   (1) 설래지만 이 근처에 지하철역이 어디 있습니까?
       sil-le-ji-man i gine-cheol-e jih-tal-eol yeo-gi eo-di ri-seum-ni-kka?
   (2) 여기에서 음행까지 얼마나 걸립니까?
       yeo-gi-e-seo eun-haeng-kka-ji geol-ma-ni-kka?
   (3) 여기에서 음행까지 시간이 얼마나 걸립니까?
       yeo-gi-e-seo eun-haeng-kka-ji si-gan-i eol-ma-na geol-ma-ni-kka?
   (4) 새로 이사하신 집은 어디세요?
       sae-ro i-sa-ha-sin jib-eun eo-di-se-yo?
   (5) 새로 이사하신 집이 어디세요? 마음에 드세요?
       sae-ro i-sa-ha-sin jib-i eo-teo-se-yo? ma-eum-e deu-se-yo?

2. Please translate the following into English:

   (1) 아파트 단지 안에 상가가 있어서 아주 편리해요.
   (2) 지난주 금요일에 이사하고 주말동안 대중 평리했어요.
   (3) 그 벌딩은 요즘 공사중이라 너무 복잡해서요.
   (4) 제가 빌딩 지하에 커피숍이 하나 있어요.
   (5) 신호등을 건너서 오른쪽으로 폭 가세요.

3. Please translate the following into Korean:

   (1) There is a computer on the desk.
   (2) My bag is under the coffee table.
   (3) The telephone is beside my bed.
   (4) The windows are behind a sofa.
   (5) There is a door in front of the living room.

4. Please write a paragraph describing your room.
Lesson 4: Asking the Date,
Day and Time
Patterns

오늘의 며칠이에요?
o-neul-i myeong-chil-i-e-yo?
What is the date today?

7월 15일이에요.
chil-wol sib-o-il-i-e-yo.
It’s July 15th.

8월 7일이 무엇 요일이에요?
pal-wol chil-il-i mu-seun yo-il-i-e-yo?
What day is August 7th?

금요일이에요.
geum-yo-il-i-e-yo.
It’s Friday.

어제 몇 시에요?
ji-geum myeot-si-ye-yo?
What time is it now?

5시 45분이에요.
da-scot-si sa-sib-o-bun-i-e-yo.
It’s 5:45.

오빠가 몇 년생이세요?
o-ppa-ga myeon-nyeon-saeng-i-e-yo?
What year was (your) brother born in?

79년생이요.
chil-sip-gu-nyeon-saeng-i-yo.
(He was) born in 1979.

Lesson 4: Asking the Date, Day and Time

도영씨 언니는요?
do-yeong-ssi eon-ni-neun-yo?
How about your sister, Do-Yeong?

우리 언니도 79년생이에요.
u-ri eon-ni-do chil-sip-gu-nyeon-saeng-i-e-yo.
My sister was born in 1979 as well.

큰일 났네요.
keun-il nan-ne-yo.
I’m in a big trouble.

어제가 언니 생일이었는데 괴력 맞이버렸어요.
eo-je-ga eon-ni saeng-il-i-eon-neun-de kkam-ppak ij-eo-beo-ryeoss-
eo-yo.
Yesterday was my sister’s birthday and I completely forgot.

우리 오빠 생일하고 똑같네요.
u-ri o-ppa saeng-il-ha-go ttok-gan-ne-yo.
It’s the same as my brother’s birthday.

우리 오빠 생일도 7월 14일인데요.
u-ri o-ppa saeng-il-do chil-wol sip-sa-il-in-de-yo.
My brother’s birthday is July 14th, too.

정말 인연이네요.
jeong-mal in-yeon-i-ne-yo.
What a coincidence. (lit. There really are acts of Providence.)

왜요? 무슨 날이에요?
wae-yo? mu-seun nal-i-e-yo?
Why? Is it a special day?
Lesson 4: Asking the Date, Day and Time

제 시계가 고장났나봐요.
je si-gye-ga go-jang-nan-na-bwa-yo.
It seems my watch is broken.

아직도 4시 10분밖에 안 됐어요.
a-jik-do ne-si sip-bun-bakk-e an dwaess-eo-yo.
It's still only 4:10.

혹시 배터리가 다 된 거 아니에요?
hok-si bae-teo-ri-ga da doen-geo a-ni-e-yo?
Do you think it might be because the battery is worn out?

그렇게봐요.
geu-reon-ga-bwa-yo.
It might be.

짐에 갈 때 시간에 한번 들려 봐야겠어요.
jib-e gal-ttae si-gye-ppang-e han-beon deul-leo bwa-ya-gess-eo-yo.
I should stop by a watch repair shop when I go home.
대화 Model Conversations

(1)
이도영: 현주씨, 오늘이 며칠이에요?
heyon-ju-ssi, o-neul-i myeo-chil-i-e-yo?
정현주: 7월 15일이에요.
chil-wol sib-o-il-i-e-yo.
이도영: 아, 큰일났네요. 여제가 며리 생일이었는데 갑작스럽게 어땠어요.
a, keun-il-na-n-ne-yo. eo-je-ja con-ni saeng-il-i-eon-neun-de kkam-ppak ji-eo-beo-ryeoss-eo-yo.
정현주: 어, 그래요? 그럼 우리 오빠 생일을 축하해도 독갈이네.
우리 오빠 생일도 7월 14일인데요.
eo-tneo, geu-reoo-se-yo? geu-reom u-ri o-ppa saeng-il-ha-go ttoek-gan-ne-yo. u-ri o-ppa saeng-il-do chil-wol sip-sal-il-in-de-yo.
이도영: 그래요? 오빠가 몇년생이세요?
geu-reo-se-yo? o-ppa-ga myeon-nyeon-saeng-i-se-yo?
정현주: 79년생이죠. 도영씨 인니는 요?
chil-sip-gu-nyeon-saeng-i-yo. do-yeong-ssi con-ni-neun-yo?
이도영: 우리 언니도 79년생이죠. 정말 인연이네요.
u-ri con-ni-do chil-sip-gu-nyeon-saeng-i-e-yo. jeong-mal in-yeon-i-ne-yo.

(2)
정현주: 도영씨, 8월 7일이 무슨 요일이에요?
do-yeong-ssi, pal-wol chil-il-i mu-seun yo-il-i-e-yo?
이도영: 금요일이죠. 왜요? 무슨 날이에요?
geum-yo-il-i-yo. wae-yo? mu-seun nal-i-e-yo?
정현주: 대학 동창회가 있는 날이에요.
이도영: 그래요? 좋겠어요.
geu-rae-yo, jo-keess-eo-yo.

Lesson 4: Asking the Date, Day and Time

정현주: 네, 그런데 그날 세로 들어온 직원 환영회하고 시간이 겹치네요.
ne. geu-reon-de geu-nal sae-ro deul-eo on jig-won hwan-yeong-hoe-ha-go si gan-i gyeop-chi-ne-yo.
이도영: 어어, 그래요? 그럼 어떻게 해요?
eo-meo, geu-rae-yo? geu-reom eo-tteo-ke hae-yo?
정현주: 할 수 없이죠. 일이 먼저니까요.
hal-ssu eop-ji-yo. il-i teon-jeo-ni-kka-yo.
영문 번역 English Translation

(1)
Lee: Hyun-Ju, what is the date today?
Jung: It’s July 15th.
Lee: Oh, I’m in big trouble. Yesterday was my sister’s birthday and I completely forgot.
Jung: Wow, is that right? Then your sister’s birthday is the same as my brother’s. My brother’s birthday is also July 14th.
Lee: Really? What year was he born in?
Jung: He was born in 1979. How about your sister, Do-Yeong?
Lee: My sister was born in 1979 as well. What a coincidence.

(2)
Jung: Do-Yeong, what day is August 7th?
Lee: It’s Friday. Why? Is it a special day?
Jung: It’s the day my college alumni reunion is on.
Lee: Really? Good for you.
Jung: Yes, but it conflicts with the reception for new employees.
Lee: Uh uh . . . really? Then what should you do?
Jung: Nothing I can do. My work is my first priority.

(3)
Lee: Hyeon-Ju, what time is it now?
Jung: It’s 5:45. It’s already almost time to go home.
Lee: I knew it. It seems my watch is broken. It’s still only 4:10 on my watch.
Jung: Do you think it might be because the battery is worn out?
Lee: I think so. I should stop by a watch repair shop when I go home.

어휘 Vocabulary

Nouns & Pronouns

금요일 geum-yo-il  
날 nal  
대학 dae-hak  
도보 경사 do-yoeng-ssi  
동창회 dong-chang-hoe  
우산 날 mu-seun nal  
배터리 bae-teo-ri  
생일 saeng-il  
시간 si-ga  
시계 si-ge  
시계 방 si-ge ppang  
어제 eon-ie  
언니 eon-ni  
오늘 o-neul  
오빠 o-ppa  
어도영 i-do-yoeng  
인연 in-yeon  
일 il  
정현주 jeong-hyeon-ju  
지금 ji-geum  
직원 jig-won  
집 jip  
회사시간 toe-geun-si-gan  
현주씨 hyeon-ju-si  
현장회 hwan-yeong-hoe  
회사hoe-sa  
79년생 chil-sip-gu-nyeon-saeng  
4시 10분 ne-si sip-bun  
5시 45분 da-seo-si sa-sib-o-bun  
7월 14일 chil-wol sip-sa-il  

Friday day, date  
college Do-Yeong alumni assembly  
special day battery  
birthday time, hour  
watch, clock  
watch repair store  
yesterday woman’s older sister today  
woman’s older brother Do-Yeong Lee  
act of Providence work  
Hyeon-Ju Jeong now employee house  
time to leave the office Hyeon-Ju welcoming party company  
a person born in 1979  
4:10  
5:45  
July 14th
July 15th
August 7th

**Verbs**

경치다 gyeop-chi-da  to overlap
고정나다 go-jang-na-da  to be broken
do 되다 da doo-da  to be worn out, to be all done
d러 보다 deul-leo-bo-da  to stop by
d어요나 deul-eo-o-da  to enter
d복같다 tok-gat-da  to be the same
있다 it-da  to exist, to have
잊어버리다 ij-eo-beo-ri-da  to forget
좋다 jo-ta  to be good
큰일나다 keun-il-na-da  to be in trouble
할 수 없다 hal sue op-da  cannot help, there is no other choice

**Adverbs, Prepositions, and Conjunctions**

거의 geo-ui  almost
그런데 geu-rcon-de  but
감빡 kkam-ppak  completely
d다 da  all
먼저 meon-jeo  ahead, first
먼저 myeo-cil  what date?
몇 년생 myeon-nyeon-saeng  what year was one born?
몇 시 myeo-si  what time?
무슨 요일 mu-seun yo-il  what day?
발씨 beol-sseo  already
새로 sae-ro  newly
아직도 a-jik-do  yet, still
어떻게 eo-tteo-ke  how
왜 wae  why
우리 u-ri  our
문법 Grammar

(1) Numbers and Counters

A. Numbers

There are two sets of numbers used in Korean: the native Korean numbers and Sino-Korean numbers. Some counters take native Korean numbers, and others take Sino-Korean numbers. Some native Korean numbers have two forms, depending on whether they are followed by a counter or used in isolation. Since native Korean numbers count from 1 to 99, all factors of 100 use the Sino-Korean number system.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sino-Korean</th>
<th>Native Korean</th>
<th>Native Korean (with counter)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 일 il</td>
<td>하나 ha-na</td>
<td>한 han</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 이 i</td>
<td>둘 dul</td>
<td>두 du</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 삼 sam</td>
<td>셋 set</td>
<td>세 se</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 사 sa</td>
<td>넷 set</td>
<td>네 ne</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 오 o</td>
<td>다섯 da-seot</td>
<td>다섯 da-seot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 육 yuk</td>
<td>여섯 yeo-seot</td>
<td>여섯 yeo-seot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 칠 chil</td>
<td>일곱 il-gop</td>
<td>일곱 il-gop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8 팔 pal</td>
<td>여덟 yeo-deol</td>
<td>여덟 yeo-deol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9 구 gu</td>
<td>아홉 a-hop</td>
<td>아홉 a-hop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 십 sip</td>
<td>열 yeol</td>
<td>열 yeol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11 십일 sib-il</td>
<td>열한 yeo-ha-na</td>
<td>열한 yeo-han</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12 십이 sib-i</td>
<td>열두 yeol-dul</td>
<td>열두 yeol-du</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13 십삼 sip-sam</td>
<td>열셋 yeol-set</td>
<td>열세 yeol-se</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14 십사 sip-sa</td>
<td>열넷 yeol-net</td>
<td>열네 yeol-ne</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15 십오 sib-o</td>
<td>열다섯 yeol-da-seot</td>
<td>열다섯 yeol-da-seot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16 십육 sim-nyuk</td>
<td>열여섯 yeo-yo-seot</td>
<td>열여섯 yeo-yo-seot</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Lesson 4: Asking the Date, Day and Time

80,000 팔만 pal-man
90,000 구만 gu-man
100,000 십만 sim-man
1,000,000 백만 baeng-man
10,000,000 천만 cheon-man
100,000,000 엽 eok
1,000,000,000 십억 sib-eok
10,000,000,000 백억 baeg-eok
100,000,000,000 천억 cheon-eok
1,000,000,000,000 조 jo

B. Noun Counters

Counters must be used when indicating a specific number of people, items, or other nouns, e.g. four men, two pens, or three months. Different counters are used for different entities or objects.

Whether native Korean or Sino-Korean numbers are used depends on the counter. Some counters use both, particularly when the number is 20 or greater. However, the native Korean numbers are generally used when the number indicates an amount. Sino-Korean numbers are used when the number is part of a numbered order, such as the chapters in a book, the stories in a building, or the months in a year.

Native-Korean numbers tend to be used with counters that have names rooted in the Korean language. Sino-Korean numbers tend to be used with counters that have names derived from other languages, such as Chinese. In other words, native-Korean numbers go with native-Korean counters, while Sino-Korean numbers are used with Sino-Korean counters.
The general word order when using counters is the noun first, the number second, the counter last. For example:

커피 (keo-pi) + 한 (han) + 잔 (jan) → 커피 한 잔 (keo-pi han jan) coffee one (counter for cup) one cup of coffee

책 (chack) + 세 (se) + 권 (gwon) → 책 세 권 (chack se gwon) book three (counter for book) three books

I. Counters with Native Korean Numbers

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Counter</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>개 gae</td>
<td>개 (gong)</td>
<td>세 개 se-gae: 3 items</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>과 gwa</td>
<td>과 수 (gwa-sau)</td>
<td>세 과 se-gwa: 3 lessons</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>과목 gwa-mok</td>
<td>과목 수 (gwa-mok-sau)</td>
<td>세 과목 se-gwa-mok: 3 courses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>권 gwon</td>
<td>권 수 (gwon-sau)</td>
<td>세 권 se-gwon: 3 books</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>달 dal</td>
<td>달 수 (dal-sau)</td>
<td>세 달 se-dal: 3 months</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>마리 ma-ri</td>
<td>마리 수 (ma-ri-sau)</td>
<td>세 마리 se-ma-ri: 3 animals</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>명 myeong</td>
<td>명 수 (myeon-sau)</td>
<td>세 명 se-myeon, 세 사람 se-sa-ram: 3 people</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>사람 sa-ram</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>번 beon</td>
<td>번 수 (beon-sau)</td>
<td>세 번 se-beon: 3 times</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>병 byeon</td>
<td>병 수 (byeon-sau)</td>
<td>세 병 se-byeon: 3 bottles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>분 bun</td>
<td>분 수 (bun-sau)</td>
<td>세 분 se-bun: 3 people (honorific)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>시 si</td>
<td>시 수 (si-sau)</td>
<td>세 시 se-si: 3 o’clock</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>시간 si-gan</td>
<td>시간 수 (si-gan-sau)</td>
<td>세 시간 se-si-gan: 3 hours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>심사 sang-ja</td>
<td>심사 수 (sang-ja-sau)</td>
<td>세 심사 se-sang-ja: 3 boxes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>잔 jan</td>
<td>잔 수 (jan-sau)</td>
<td>세 잔 se-jan: 3 cups</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>장 jang</td>
<td>장 수 (jang-sau)</td>
<td>세 장 se-jang: 3 sheets</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

II. Counters with Sino-Korean Numbers

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Counter</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>과 gwa</td>
<td>과 수 (gwa-sau)</td>
<td>세 과 se-gwa: 7 lessons</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>년 nyeon</td>
<td>년 수 (nyeon-sau)</td>
<td>세 년 se-nyeon: 7 years</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>달래 dal-leo/bul</td>
<td>달래 수 (dal-leo-sau)</td>
<td>세 달래 se-dal-leo: 7 dollars</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>마일 ma-il</td>
<td>마일 수 (ma-il-sau)</td>
<td>세 마일 se-ma-il: 7 miles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>번 beon</td>
<td>번 수 (beon-sau)</td>
<td>세 번 se-beon: 7 number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>분 bun</td>
<td>분 수 (bun-sau)</td>
<td>세 분 se-bun: 7 minutes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Lesson 4: Asking the Date, Day and Time

센트 sen-teu | 핵센트 chil-sen-teu: 7 cents
원 won       | 천원 chil-won: 7 won
월 wol       | 천월 chil-wol: July
일 ii        | 일일 chil-il: 7th
진화번호 jeon-hw-beon-ho | 휴식사 예약 상구: 724-5839
층 cheung    | 층층 chil-cheung: 7th floor
파운드 pa-un-deu | 천파운드 chil-pa-un-deu: 7 pounds
학년 hang-nyeon | 천학년 chil-hang-nyeon: 7th grade

(2) The Noun-modifying Form (Relative Clauses)

An example of a relative clause in an English phrase is the “who is going” in “a person who is going.” In Korean, such a phrase is translated by putting the particles ~는 (neun), ~을 (eun), or ~이 (e) after the relative clause. There is no relative pronoun in Korean as exist in English. The Korean translation of the English phrase “a person who is going” is 가는 사람 (ga-neun sa-ran).

Korean relative clauses have the following characteristics:

a. The relative clause comes first, the clause particle second, and the modified noun last. This is true regardless of the tense. The phrase 가는 사람 begins with 가 / “to go,” followed by the particle 는 / (the functional equivalent of “is ... ~ing”), and ending with 사람 / “a person.”

b. A relative clause in the present tense uses the particles ~는, ~을, and ~이. The particle ~은 follows a relative clause using an active verb (e.g. 악다 [meok-da] / “to eat”). The particles ~은 and ~는 follow a relative clause that uses a descriptive verb, such as 작다 (jak-da) / “to be small.” The particle ~는 is used if the clause ends in a consonant. The particle ~는 is used if it ends in a vowel, such as 예쁘다 (ye-ppeu-da) / “to be pretty.”
c. Although the verbs 있다 (it-da) / “to be” and 없다 (eop-da) / “to not be” are classified as descriptive verbs, they follow the rules governing active verbs in relative clauses.

d. Relative clauses in the past tense are followed by the particles ~은 and ~을. For example, 마신 물 (ma-sín mul) / “the water that was drank,” and 먹은 음식 (meog-eun eum-sik) / “the food that was eaten.”

e. Relative clauses in the prospective or future tense are followed by the particles ~ㄹ(l) and ~을 (eul). For example, 마실 물 (ma-si mul) / “water that will be drank,” and 먹을 음식 (meog-eul eum-sik) / “food that will be eaten.” The particle ~ㄹ follows clauses ending with a vowel, while ~을 follows clauses ending in a consonant.

The chart below shows the various kinds of verbs with the appropriate particles in the relative clause forms.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Active Verb</th>
<th>Descriptive Verb</th>
<th>It-da</th>
<th>Eop-da</th>
<th>Ja-da</th>
<th>Jig-won-i-da</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>meok-da / ja-da</td>
<td>작다 / 이쁘다</td>
<td>작던</td>
<td>이 vess</td>
<td>작던</td>
<td>작던</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nu-ga</td>
<td>nu-ga gan-ho-won-i-se-yo</td>
<td>Who's the nurse?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nu-gu</td>
<td>nu-gu-reul chaj-eu-se-yo</td>
<td>Who are you looking for?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mu-seun</td>
<td>mu-seun il-eul ha-se-yo</td>
<td>What kind of work do you do? / What do you do for a living?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mu-eot</td>
<td>mu-eot reul jo-a-ha-se-yo</td>
<td>What do you like?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mwo</td>
<td>mwo-ga je-il eo-ryeo-u-se-yo</td>
<td>What is most difficult for you?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eo-neu</td>
<td>eo-neu na-ra sa-ran-i-se-yo</td>
<td>Which country are you from?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Lesson 4: Asking the Date, Day and Time

Indefinite Pronouns

Question words, with the exception of 왜 (wae)/“why,” can also be used as indefinite pronouns. Indefinite pronouns are not stressed in spoken Korean. The indefinite pronouns, their English equivalents, and sample sentences are listed below.

누가 someone/anyone
nu-ga
누가 왔어요.
nu-ga wass-eo-yo
Someone is coming.
There is someone.

누구 someone/anyone
nu-gu
누구를 데리고 올 거예요.
nu-gu-reul de-ri-go ol geo-ye-yo
I am bringing someone.

무슨 some kind of
mu-seun
무슨 냄새가 나요.
mu-seun naem-sae-ga na-yo
I smell something.

뭐 something/anything
mwo
뭐 좀 샀어요.
mwo jom sass-eo-yo
I bought something.

무엇 something/anything
(mu-eot)
(original form of 뭐)

어느 some [noun]
어느 날 갑자기 뀄가 줄 안 들렸어요.
eo-neu-nal gap-ja-gi gwi-ga jal an
deul-lyeoss-eo-yo
One day I can’t hear all of sudden.
A sentence clause using the verb + ～때 or ～을때 is always followed by another sentence clause. The second clause describes what happened during the first clause. For example:

한국에 갔 때 비행기를 타고 갔어요.
(han-gug-e gal-tae bi-haeng-gi-reul ta-go gass-eo-yo)
When I went to Korea, I went by airplane.

These two actions occurred simultaneously. However, when the second action occurs in the midst of the first action (or after it), the verb stem changes to the stem in the past tense form. For example:

한국에 갔을 때 활머니를 처음 안났어요.
(han-gug-e gass-eul tae hal-mee-ri-reul cheo-eum man-nass-eo-yo)
When I went to Korea, I met my grandmother for the first time.

Note that よ, the verb stem for the Korean equivalent of “to go,” becomes the だ of 겪어요, the Korean equivalent of “went,” in the first clause.

(5) The Particles ～하고, ～랑 & ～이랑, and ～와 & 관

The particle ～하고 (ha-go) is the equivalent of the English “and.” It is the conjunction between two nouns. It is generally used in everyday speech and informal writing. Using ～하고, the Korean equivalent of “Jeong-Ho and Michael” is 정호하고 마이클 (jeong-ho-ha-go ma-i-keul).

The particles ～랑 (rang) and ～이랑 (i-rang) are also used to say “and” in informal situations. The particle ～랑 is used after nouns that end in a vowel, while ～이랑 is used after nouns that end in a consonant. Using ～랑, the Korean equivalent of “Jeong-Ho and Michael” is 정호랑 마이클 (jeong-ho-rang ma-i-keul).
In formal situations, the particles 〜와 (wa) and 〜과 (gwa) are used. One uses 〜와 when the noun ends in a vowel, and 〜과 when the noun ends in a consonant. Using 〜와, the Korean equivalent of Jeong-Ho and Michael is 정호와 마이클 (jeong-ho-wa ma-i-keul).

(6) The Particles 〜나, 〜이나, and 〜밖에

The particles 〜나 (na) and 〜이나 (i-na) indicate surprise. They are used when a quantity is significantly greater than one’s expectations. The particle 〜나 is used when the preceding expression ends in a vowel. One uses 〜이나 when the expression ends in a consonant.

The particle 〜밖에 (bakk-e) is used when indicating that a quantity is smaller in comparison to another. One may also hear it when a quantity is less than expected. The second half of the following exchange demonstrates its use:

저는 형제가 다섯 명이나 있어요.
(jeo-neun hyeong-je-ga da-seot-myeong-i-na iss-eo-yo)
I have five siblings.

저는 두 명밖에 없어요.
(jeo-neun du-myeong-bakk-e eops-eo-yo)
I have only two.

Note that the noun construction 두 명 (“two siblings” in this context) comes first. The particle 〜에다 comes second, and the negative form of the verb follows. (The word 없어요 literally means “don’t have.”) All sentences featuring 〜에다 follow this pattern.

### Lesson 4: Asking the Date, Day and Time

#### Time

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>한시 han-si</td>
<td>1 o’clock</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>두시 du-si</td>
<td>2 o’clock</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>세시 se-si</td>
<td>3 o’clock</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>네시 ne-si</td>
<td>4 o’clock</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>다섯시 da-seot-si</td>
<td>5 o’clock</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>여섯시 yeo-seot-si</td>
<td>6 o’clock</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>일곱시 il-gop-si</td>
<td>7 o’clock</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>여덟시 yeo-deol-ssi</td>
<td>8 o’clock</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>아홉시 a-hop-si</td>
<td>9 o’clock</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>열시 yeot-ssi</td>
<td>10 o’clock</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>열한시 yeoi-han-si</td>
<td>11 o’clock</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>열두시 yeol-ttu-si</td>
<td>12 o’clock</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Minutes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>Minutes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>오분 o-bun</td>
<td>5 minutes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>십분 sip-bun</td>
<td>10 minutes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>십오분 sib-o-bun</td>
<td>15 minutes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이십분 i-sip-bun</td>
<td>20 minutes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이십오분 i-sib-o-bun</td>
<td>25 minutes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>삼십분 sam-sip-bun</td>
<td>30 minutes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>반 ban</td>
<td>30 minutes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>삼십오분 sam-sib-o-bun</td>
<td>35 minutes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>사십분 sa-sip-bun</td>
<td>40 minutes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>사십오분 sa-sib-o-bun</td>
<td>45 minutes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>오십분 o-sip-bun</td>
<td>50 minutes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>오십오분 o-sib-o-bun</td>
<td>55 minutes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Other Time Expressions

오전 o-jeon  A.M.
오후 o-hu  P.M.
새벽 sae-byeoek  dawn
아침 a-chim  morning
낮 jeom-sim  afternoon
저녁 jeo-nyoeok  evening
밤 bamm  night

(2) The Days of the Month

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Day</th>
<th>Korean</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1st</td>
<td>일일 il-il</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd</td>
<td>이일 i-il</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3rd</td>
<td>삐일 sam-il</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4th</td>
<td>사일 sa-il</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5th</td>
<td>오일 o-il</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6th</td>
<td>육일 yug-il</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7th</td>
<td>칠일 chil-il</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8th</td>
<td>팔일 pal-il</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9th</td>
<td>구일 gu-il</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10th</td>
<td>십일 sib-il</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11th</td>
<td>십일 sib-il</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12th</td>
<td>십일 sib-il</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13th</td>
<td>십일 sib-il</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14th</td>
<td>십일 sib-il</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15th</td>
<td>십일 sib-il</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16th</td>
<td>십일 sib-il</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17th</td>
<td>십일 sib-il</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18th</td>
<td>십일 sib-il</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19th</td>
<td>십일 sib-il</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20th</td>
<td>십일 sib-il</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21st</td>
<td>십일 sib-il</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22nd</td>
<td>십일 sib-il</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(3) The Days of the Week

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>금일 / 금요일</td>
<td>Friday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>토요일</td>
<td>Saturday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>일요일</td>
<td>Sunday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>어요일</td>
<td>Monday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>화요일</td>
<td>Tuesday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>수요일</td>
<td>Wednesday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>목요일</td>
<td>Thursday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>금요일 / 금요일</td>
<td>Friday</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*the day before yesterday, yesterday, today, tomorrow, the day after tomorrow*
Lesson 4: Asking the Date, Day and Time

연습문제 Exercises

1. Please respond to the following.

(1) 오늘이 머칠이에요? o-neul-i myeo-chil-i-e-yo?
(2) 날일이 무슨 요일이에요? nae-il-i mu-seun yo-il-i-e-yo?
(3) 지금 몇 시야요? ji-geun myeot-si-ye-yo?
(4) 설레지만 몇 년생이세요? sil-le-jii-man myeon-nyeon-saeng-i-se-yo?
(5) 생일이 몇 월 머칠이세요? saeng-il-i myeot-wol myeo-chil-i-se-yo?

2. Please translate the following into English.

(1) 어제가 운이 생일이었는데 감사 많이 생겼어요. eo-je-ga on-ri saeng-il-i-eon-neun de kkan-ppak ij-eo-ber-rycoss-eo-yo.
(2) 새로 들어온 직원 환영회하고 시간이 경치네요. sae-ro deul-eo-on jig-won hwan-yeong-hoe-ha-go si-gan-i gyeop-chi-ne-yo.
(3) 내일은 대학 동창회가 있는 날이예요. nae-il-eun dae-hak dong-chang-hoe-ga in-nun nal-i-e-yo.
(4) 별씨 퇴근시간이 거의 다 됐네요. beol-scco toe-geun-si-gan-i geo-i da dwaen-ne-yo.
(5) 잡에 갈 때 계획을 훼란 들려 쌓아가겠어요. jib-e gal-ttae si-gye-pang-e han-beon deul-leo bwa-ya-gess-ee-yo.
(6) 혹시 베타리가 다 된 거 아니에요? hok-si bae-teo-ri-ga da doen ge0 a-ni-e-yo?

3. Please write the following in Korean:

(1) July 16th, 1997
(2) 12:30 P.M.
(3) June 30th, 1965
(4) 3:45 P.M.
(5) August 7th, 2004
(6) 7:15 A.M.
(7) October 29th, 2000
(8) 9:20 A.M.
(9) December 25th, 2006
(10) 10:40 A.M.

4. Please write a paragraph describing your daily/weekly schedule.

---

Lesson 5: Making a Telephone Call
Patterns

따르릉, 따르릉
ttta-reu-reung, ttta-reu-reung
ring-ring

어보세요? 거기 정현주씨댁이지요?
yeo-bo-se-yo? ge-gi jeong-heon-ju-ssi daeg-i-ji-yo?
Hello. Is this Miss. Hyeon-Ju Jung’s residence?

네, 그런대요.
ne, geu-reon-de-yo.
Yes, it is.

죄송하지만 혹시 현주씨 지금 계시면 좀 바꿔주시겠어요?
joe-song-ha-ji-man hok-si hyeon-ju-ssi ji-geum gye-si-myeon jom
ba-kkwo ju-si-gess-co-yo?
Excuse me, but may I talk to Hyeon-Ju if she is home now?

전대요. 설례지만 누구세요?
jeon-de-yo. sil-lye-ji-man nu-gu-se-yo?
This is she. Excuse me, but who is this?

현주씨, 저 이도영이에요.
hyeon-ju-ssi, jeo i-do-yeong-i-e-yo.
Hyeon-Ju, This is Do-Yeong Lee.

저는 정현주라고 하는데요.
joe-neun jeong-hyeonju-ra-go ha-neun-de-yo.
I am Hyeon-Ju Jeong.
Lesson 5: Making a Telephone Call

전화 메시지 받으면 사무실로 바로 전화하라고 해 주세요.
jeon-hwa me-si-ji bad-eu-myeon sa-mu-sil-lo ba-ro jeon-hwa-ha-ra-go hae ju-se-yo.
Please say to call back to the office as soon as she gets the message.

알겠습니다.
al-get-seum-ni-da.
I understand.

오빠 지금 집에 없는데요.
o-ppa ji-geum jib-e eom-neun-de-yo.
My brother is not home now.

들어오면 뭐라고 전해 드릴까요?
deu-l-eo-o-myeon mwo-ra-go jeon-hae deu-ri-kka-yo?
What shall I tell him when he comes home?

아니오, 생각이야. 제가 나중에 다시 전화할게요.
a-ni-o, gwaen-chan-a-yo, jeo-ga na-jung-e da-si jeon-hwa-hal-kke-yo.
No, it's OK. I will just call him again later.

혹시 정호씨 몇 시쯤 집에 들어오는지 아세요?
hok-si jeong-ho-ssi myeon-si-jjeum jib-e deul-eo-o-neun-ji a-se-yo?
Do you know, by any chance, when he will be back home?

질 모르겠다네요.
jal mo-reu-gen-neun-de-yo.
I don’t well know. / I am not sure.

보통 저녁 6시쯤 오는데요.
bo-tong jeo-nyeok yeo-seo-si-jjeum o-neun-de-yo.
He usually comes home around 6:00 P.M.
다화 Model Conversations

1.
정현주: (따르릉, 따르릉) 여보세요?
   (tta-reu-reung, tta-reu-reung) yeo-bo-se-yo?
이도영: 여보세요? 갑기 정현주씨 백이지요?
   yeo-bo-se-yo? geogi jeong-hyeon-ju-ssi daeg-i-ji-yo?
정현주: 네, 그런데요.
   ne, geu-reon-de-yo.
이도영: 최송하지만 혹시 현주씨 지금 계시면 좀 바꿔주시겠어요?
   joo-sang-ha-ji-man hok-si hyeon-ju-ssi ji-geum
   gye-si-myeon jom ba-kkwo-ju-si-gess-eo-yo?
정현주: 전데요. 실헤지만 누구세요?
   jeon-de-yo. sii-lye-ji-man nu-gu-se-yo?
이도영: 현주씨, 저 이도영이에요. 아침 일찍 전화 드러서 최송해요.
   hyeon-ju-ssi, jeo i-do-yeong-i-e-yo. a-chim il-jjik
   jeon-hwa deu-ryeo-seo joo-sang-hae-yo.
정현주: 어머, 도영씨. 편찮아요. 그런데 왜 이렇게요?
   eo-meo, do-yeong-ssi. gwaen-chan-a-yo. geu-reon-de
   wen-il-i-se-yo?
이도영: 혹시 김현주 과장님 핸드폰 전화 번호 아세요?
   hok-si gim-hyeon-jun gwa-jang-nim haen-deu-pon
   jeon-hwa-beon-ho a-se-yo?
   급히 연락드릴 일이 있는데 전화번호를 몰라서요.
   geu-pi yeol-lak-deu-ri il-i in-neun-de jeon-hwa-beon-ho-
   reul mol-la-seo-yo.
정현주: 네, 알아요. 별안간 가다리세요. 야, 여기 있어요.
   011-399-3974예요.
   ne, al-a-yo. jam-kkan-man gi-da-ri-se-yo. a, yeo-gi
   iss-eo-yo. gong-il-il sam-gu-gu-e sam-gu-chil-sa-ye-yo.
이도영: 감사합니다. 안녕히 계세요.
   gam-sa-ham-ni-da. an-nyeon-hi gye-se-yo.
정현우: 네, 안녕히 계세요.
nc, an-nyeon-hi gye-se-yo.

(2)
정현우: 도영씨, 내일 4시에 직원회의 있는 거 다를 알고 있지 요?
do-yeong-sii, nae-il ne-si-e jie-won-hoe-ui in-neun geo da-deul al-go it-ji-yo?
이도영: 어제 다 연락했는데 강재은씨만 아직 연락이 안 됐어요.
shin-hae is e gaweondeul an banyeoyo.
정현우: 그럼 지금 다시 한번 더 걸어 보실래요?
geu-reom ji-geum da-si han-beon deo geol-eo bo-sil-laeyo?
이도영: 네, 그러지요....(따르릉, 따르릉).... 자동 응답기가 받던데요. 그냥 메시지를 남길까요?
ne, geu-reo-ji-yo. (ta-ta-reung, tta-teu-reung) ja-dong eung-dap-gi-ga ban-neun-de-yo. geu-nyang me-si-ji-reul nam-gil-kka-yo?
정현우: 그래요. 전화 메시지를 받으면 사무실로 바로 전화하라고 해 주세요.
geu-reo-se-yo. jeon-hwa me-si-ji bad-eu-myeon sa-mu-sil-lo ba-ro jeon-hwa-ha-ra-go hae ju-se-yo.
이도영: 알겠습니다.
al-get-setum-ni-da.

(3)
정현우: 여보세요? 거기 이정호씨 묻이지요?
yeo-bo-se-yo? geo-gi i-jeong-ho-sse daeg-i-jii-yo?
이정은: 네, 그런데요. 실례지만 누구세요?
ne, geu-reom-de-yo. sil-lye-ji-man nu-gu-se-yo.
Lesson 5: Making a Telephone Call

(3)
Jung: Hello, is this Mr. Jeong-Ho Lee’s residence?
Lee: Yes, it is. Excuse me, but who is this?
Jung: This is Hyeon-Ju Jung. May I please talk to Jeong-Ho Lee if he is home now?
Lee: Ah, Hyeon-Ju. This is Jeong-Eun. How are you? My brother is not home now. What shall I tell him when he comes home?
Jung: No, it’s OK. I will just call him again later. Do you know, by any chance, when he will be back home?
Lee: I am not sure. He usually comes home around 6:00 P.M., but he said he would be a little late today.
Jung: Did he? Then is it OK if I call back again around 8:00 P.M.?
Lee: Yes, please. Good-bye.
Lesson 5: Making a Telephone Call

Vocabulary

Nouns / Pronouns

강제운씨 gang-jae-eun-ssi
과장님 gwa-jang-nim
누구 nu-gu
다들 da-deul
댁 daek
메시지 me-se-ji
몇 시점 myeot-si-jjeum
위 mwo
사무실 sa-mu-sil
신호 sin-ho
아침 a-chim
연락 yeol-lak
오늘 o-neul
밤일 wen-il
일 il
자동 응답기 ja-dong eung-dap-gi
저녁 jeo-nyeok
전화 jeon-hwa
전화번호 jeon-hwa-boon-ho
작전회의 jig-won-hoe-ui
핸드폰 haen-deu-pon
6시쯤 yeo-seot-si-jjeum
8시쯤 yeo-deol-si-ijjun

Ms. Jae-Eun Gang
department manager
who
everyone, all
house (hon.)
message
approximately what time?
what?
office
signal
morning
contact
today
what thing?
something, work
answering machine
evening
telephone
telephone number
staff meeting
 cellular phone
about 6:00
about 8:00

Verbs

감사하다 gam-sa-ha-da
to thank
계시다 gye-si-da
to exist, to be (hon.)
랜달다 gwen-chan-ta
to be OK
가다리다 gi-da-ri-da
to wait
남가다 nam-gi-da
to leave

נק다 neut-da
to be late
d 돌아오다 deul-eo-o-da
to return home, to enter
모르다 mo-reu-da
to know
바귀주다 ba-kkwo-ju-da
to change, to switch (telephones)
받다 bat-da
to receive
알다 al-da
to know
연락 드리다 yeol-lak deu-ri-da
to contact
연락하다 yeol-la-ka-da
to contact
오다 o-da
to come
전화 걸다 jeon-hwa geol-da
to make a phone call
전화 드리다 jeon-hwa deu-ri-da
to make a phone call (hon.)
전화하다 jeon-hwa-ha-da
to make a phone call
죄송하다 jee-song-ha-da
to be sorry

Adverbs / Conjunctions

거기 geo-gi
there
그냥 geu-nyang
just
급히 geu-pi
in a hurry
나중에 na-jung-e
later
다 da
all
d시 da-si
again
d 더 deo
more
따뜻함 tta-reu-reung
ring ring...
바로 baro
a.s.a.p.
보통 bo-tong
in general
실례지만 sil-lye-ji-man
excuse me but..., I am sorry but...
어찌 a-jik
yet
일찍 il-jik
early
잘 잘
well
감싼만 jam-kkan-man
for a moment
좀 jom
please
지금 ji-geum
now
한번 han-beon
once
훈시 hok-si
by any chance, just in case
Grammar

(1) Indirect quotation

Directly or indirectly, a speaker often passes along what others have said. An indirect narrative occurs when someone else's words are passed along with modification. It takes the basic form of [Quoted Sentence + ~다고 하다 (go ha-da)].

a. to quote a general statement that is currently in circulation, use ~다고 하다 (go ha-da) with the appropriate sentence ending, such as ...고 해요/합니다 (...go hae-yo/ham-ni-da).

b. to quote a specific statement in the past, use ~고 했다 (go haet-da) with the appropriate sentence ending, such as ...고 했어요/했습니다 (...go haess-e-o-yo/haet-seum-ni-da)

c. When the quoted statement is/was said by one who is respected, the honorific forms of 하다 (ha-da) are used. The sentence ending ...고 하세요/합니다 (...go ha-se-yo/ha-sim-ni-da) is used for the present tense. The ending ...고 하셨어요/하셨습니다 (...go ha-syeess-e-o-yo/ha-syeot-seum-ni-da) is used for the past tense.

The quoted statement also takes the different endings appropriate in the polite style, depending on the sentence type of the quote. Declarative sentences, questions, commands, and proposals take different forms, as do past and present.

Declarative sentences that are quoted use a variation of the sentence ending ~다고 해요 (da-go hae-yo). There are four types of declarative sentences used in quotations: those using an active verb stem, those using a descriptive verb stem, those using a copula, and those describing a past event. The sentence types and their endings:

active verb stems ending in a consonant
~는다고 해요 (neun-da-go hae-yo)

descriptive verb stems
~다고 해요 (da-go hae-yo)
copula (~이)
~라고 해요 (ra-go hae-yo)
past events ending
~았다고 해요 (at-da-ga-hae-yo) or
~였다고 해요 (eot-da-ga-hae-yo)

In colloquial speech, ~다고 해요 may be shortened to ~내요 when quoting sentences that use active verbs or describe past events.

Questions that are quoted use a variation of the sentence ending ~는~나고 해요 (neu-nya-go hae-yo). As with declarative sentences, there are four types of questions used in quotations: those using active verb stems, those using descriptive verb stems, those using a copula, and those describing a past event. The question types and their endings:

active verb stems
~는~나고 해요 (neu-nya-go hae-yo)

descriptive verb stems
~요,~나고 해요 ([eu-] nya-go hae-yo)
copula
~요,~나고 해요 ([eu-] nya-go hae-yo)
past events
~았느~나고 해요 (at-neu-nya-go hae-yo) or
~있느~나고 해요 (eot-neu-nya-go hae-yo)

In colloquial speech, the ending can be shortened to ~네요 (neu-nyae-yo) with active verb stems, to ~요네요 ([eu-] nyae-yo) with
descriptive verb stems and copulas, and to -었/었어요 (eot-nyae-yo) with questions that describe past events.

Commands and requests that are quoted use a variation of the sentence ending -라고 해요 (ra-go hae-yo).

Verbs stems ending in a vowel use -라고 해요 (ra-go hae-yo), while those ending in a consonant use -으라고 해요 (eu-ra-go hae-yo). In colloquial speech, the endings are shortened to -례요 (rae-yo) with verb stems that end in a vowel, and to -례요 (eu-rae-yo) with stems that end in a consonant.

With a proposal, the ending -자고 해요 (ja-go hae-yo) is used with all verb stems. In colloquial speech, it can be shortened to -재요 (jae-yo).

The act of speaking may be indicated by a different verb than 하다 (ha-da) if the specific kind of speech is specified. Examples include -다/라고 전해주세요 (da/ra-go jeon-hae-ju-se-yo) “please convey/pass along the message that…,” -또한가요 (tae) 나고 몰아왔어요 (neunya/[eu]-nya-go mul-eo-bwass-eo-yo) “asked if/whether…,” and -다/라고 가르쳐 했어요 ([eu]-ra-go ga-reo-cheo jwoss-eo-yo) “introduced someone to….”

(2) Honorific Expressions

Honorific expressions in Korean are systematized. Honorific forms appear in hierarchical address/reference terms and titles, some commonly used nouns and verbs, the pronoun system, particles, and verb suffixes. Sentences in Korean require knowledge of one’s social relationships to the listener or the one about whom is speaking in terms of age, social status, and kinship. The following table is a summary of honorific forms.
Subject Honorific

할머니께서 교회에 가시.
hal-meo-ni-kke-seo gyo-hoe-e ga-syeo.
My grandmother goes to church.

Subject and Listener Honorific

할머니께서 교회에 가세요.
hal-meo-ni-kke-seo gyo-hoe-e gae-se-yo.
My grandmother goes to church.

(3) Name + ㅂ (i)

Korean names are composed of a family name followed by a given name. When a person is referred to in a friendly, intimate manner by given name, the suffix ㅂ (i) is added to the name (without a title such as 씨 (ssi)) if it ends in a consonant, as in 현준이 (hyeon-jun-i) and 혜린이 (hye-rin-i). For given names ending in a vowel, no suffix is added, as in 정호 (jeong-ho) and 현주 (hyeon-ju). This rule does not apply to foreign names.

(4) ~는데요 (neun-de-yo)/~(으)ㄴ데요 ((eu)n-de-yo)

Background information

The sentence endings ~는데요 and ~의 (으)ㄴ데요 are used when a speaker presents background information. The speaker is conveying information in an open-ended manner that will allow the listener to figure out what to do next. This is often a polite way of expressing things. For example:

A: 정호 있어요? (jeong-ho iss-eo-yo?) “Is Jeong-Ho there?”
B: 아니오, 지금 집에 없는데요. (a-ni-o, ji-geum jib-e eom-neun-de-yo.) “No, he is not at home now.”
Lesson 5: Making a Telephone Call.

of an action is a respected elder, the particle ~께 should be used instead. The particle ~한테서 (han-te-seo) is used when the speaker wishes to indicate the source of an action or a point of departure. When not dealing with people, the particles ~한테 (han-te) and ~한테서 (han-te-seo) should be replaced with ~에 (e) and ~에서 (e-seo), respectively. The particle 도 (do) or 만 (man) is added after the particles ~한테 (han-te), ~한테서 (han-te-seo), ~에 (e), and ~에서 (e-seo).

정호한테 전화 왔어요.
jeong-ho-han-te jeon-hwa wass-eo-yo.
A phone call is to Jeong-Ho.

정호한테서 전화 왔어요.
jeong-ho-han-te-seo jeon-hwa wass-eo-yo.
A phone call is from Jeong-Ho.

회사에 전화 하세요.
hoe-sa-e jeon-hwa-ha-se-yo.
Please make a call to your office.

회사에서 전화 왔어요.
hoe-sa-e-seo jeon-hwa wass-eo-yo.
A phone call is from your office.

Speaker B uses 는데요 (eom-neun-de-yo) to respond instead of 없어요 (eops-eo-yo). The response 는데요 invites speaker A to follow up with another statement or action.

The endings also allow one to handle a potentially troublesome situation, such as disagreement, denial, or rejection, with diplomacy. They permit both parties to save face in a discussion. For example:

A: 오늘 씨월드에 갈래요? (o-neul ssi-wol-deu-e ga-ghi gal-lae-yo?) “Will you go to Sea World with me today?”

B: 미안하지만 오늘은 다른 약속이 있는데요. (mi-an-ha-ji-man o-neul-eun da-reun yak-sog-i in-neun-de-yo.) “I am sorry, but I have another appointment today.”

Although speaker B is clearly declining the invitation (here, because of a schedule conflict), the use of 는데요 helps avoid directly rejecting speaker A.

(5) ~지요? (ji-yo?) Tag question

The question ending ~지요? (ji-yo?) is used when one expects to hear confirmation of what one has said. The English equivalent is “is it right?” or “... isn’t it?” In spoken Korean, ~지요? (ji-yo?) is often shortened to ~요? (jyo?). This is in contrast to the general ending of yes/no questions, ~어서요? (a/eo-yo), in which the speaker has no apparent assumption about the answer.

(6) ~한테 (han-te) and ~한테서 (han-te-seo) ‘to’ and ‘from’

The particle ~한테 (han-te) is used when the speaker wishes to indicate an arrival point for a movement, the range of the verb it is directed toward, or the cause of an action. When the recipient
Lesson 5: Making a Telephone Call

참고학습 Further Study

(1) Telephone Expressions

[person] 좀 바꿔주세요.
[person] jom ba-kkke-wo ju-se-yo.
May I speak to [person]?

[person] 한테 전화하세요.
[person] han-te jeon-hwa-ha-se-yo.
Please call [person].

[person] 한데서 전화 왔어요.
[person] han-te-seo jeon-hwa wass-/eo-yo.
The phone call is from [person].

이따가 다시 전화해주세요.
i-tta-ga da-si jeon-hwa-hal-kke-yo.
I will call later.

잠깐만 기타리세요.
Just a minute, please.

전화 받으세요.
jeon-hwa bad-eu-se-yo.
Please answer the phone.

전화해 주세요.
jeon-hwa-hae ju-se-yo.
Please give me a call.

통화 중이에요.
tong-hwa-jung-i-e-yo.
The line is busy.

신청하는 거래 전화를 안 받는대요.
sin-ho-neun ga-neun-de jeon-hwa-reul an ban-neun-de-yo.
It's ringing, but no one answers the phone.

자동 응답기가 받는데요.
ja-dong eung-dap-gi-ga ban-neun-de-yo.
The answering machine is on.

자동 응답기에 메모를 남겨 주세요.
ja-dong eung-dap-gi-e me-mo-reul nam-gyeo ju-se-yo.
Please leave a message in the answering machine.

전화가 계속 통화중이에요.
The line is still busy.

전화가 고장난 것 같아요.
jeon-hwa-ga go-jang-nan geot gat-a-yo.
Maybe the phone is out of order.

전화가 끊어졌어요.
jeon-hwa-ga kkeun-eo-jeoss-eo-yo.
The line has been disconnected.

죄송합니다. 전화를 잘못 건 것 같아요.
joe-song-ham-ni-da jeon-hwa-reul jal mot geon geot gat-a-yo.
I am sorry. I must have dialed the wrong number.

집에 아무도 없나봐요.
jib-e a-mu-do com-na-bwa-yo.
It seems like no one is home.

혹시 이 번호로 팩스를 보내도 될까요?
hok-si i beon-ho-ro paek-seu-reul bo-rae-do doel-kka-yo?
Can I send a fax to this number?
(2) Extended Family terms

시아버지 (or 시아버지) si-a-beo-nim  father-in-law
시어머님 (or 시어머니) si-eo-meo-nim  mother-in-law
장인여仑 jang-in-eo-reun  father-in-law
장모님 jang-mo-nim  mother-in-law

매느리 myeo-neu-ri  daughter-in-law
사위 sa-wi  sen-in-law
손녀 son-nyeo  granddaughter
손자 son-ja  grandson
손주 son-ju  grandchildren

큰아버지 keun-a-beo-ji  uncle (father's older brother)
큰어머니 keun-eo-meo-ni  aunt (큰아버지's wife)
Lesson 5: Making a Telephone Call

Cultural Note

Telephone cards are the most common means of paying with public telephones. They are available at most convenience stores. Some public telephones accept credit cards, but only a few accept coins. If one wishes to make an international call, one must enter the prefix 001, 002, 007, or 008, followed by the appropriate country prefix, and then the telephone number. When making a long-distance call, the number must be preceded the area code (see below). Apart from that, follow the same instructions as with regular telephones. Numbers can be looked up by using the telephone book or by dialing 114 for directory service. Telephone books can be usually be found under the telephone in the telephone booth.

In cases of emergency, the numbers 112 (the police department) or 119 (the fire department) can be dialed toll-free from any phone. These numbers are to an operator at an emergency service center. When speaking to the operator, one states one’s name and location, what the problem is, and ask for appropriate assistance.

Internet cafes or computer access places are commonly found in most cities. Internet cafes are one of the most common hangouts for younger people. Some public libraries or post offices also offer Internet access. Most homes have Internet access as well. ADSL and cable services are very common, and telephone line service is rare these days.

Terms of Address

Although people regularly use 저(jeo) and 나 (na) when referring to themselves, it is less common for people to address others using such personal pronouns. Instead, it is common to use kinship terms even when people are not actually related. A speaker will use the terms 형 (hyeong)/오빠 (o-ppa) “older brother” and 누나 (nu-na)/언니 (eon-ni) “older sister” to address someone who is somewhat older. The terms 아저씨 (a-jeo-ssi) “uncle” and 아줌마 (a-jum-ma) “aunt” are used to address someone who is a generation apart in age. When addressing an elderly person, one will use the terms 할아버지 (hal-a-beo-ji) “grandfather” and 할머니 (hal-meo-ni) “grandmother”. When speaking to someone who is the same age or younger, one says the person’s first name, followed by either ~아 (a) or ~아 (ya). The ending ~아 (a) is used if the name ends with a consonant, as with 현준아 (Hyeon-jun-a). The ending ~아 (ya) is used if the name ends in a vowel, as with 정호아 (Jeong-ho-ya).
연습문제 Exercises

1. Please respond to the following:

   (1) 여보세요. 거기 [your name] 씨 댁이지요?
yeo-bo-se-yo. geu-gi [your name] gisa daeg-i-ji-yo?

   (2) 최송하지만 혹시 [your name] 씨 지금 게시면 좀 바꿔 주시 겠어요?
joe-song-ha-ji-man hok-si ___________ ssi ji-geum gye-si-
myeon jom ba-kkwo ju-si-gess-eo-yo?

   (3) 혹시 [your friend's name] 씨 핸드폰 전화번호 아세요?
hok-si ___________ ssi haen-deu-pon jeon-hwa-beon-bo
a-se-yo?

   (4) 혹시 [your friend's name] 씨 몇시쯤 집에 들어오는지 아세요?
hok-si ___________ ssi myeot-si-jjeum jib-e deul-eo-o-
neun-ji a-se-yo?

   (5) [your friend's name] 씨 지금 집에 없는데요, 들어오면 와라
고 전해 드릴까요?
_________ ssi ji-geum jib-e eom-neun-de-yo. deul-eo-o-
myeon mwo-na-go jeon-hae deu-ri-lkkka-yo?

2. Please translate the following into English:

   (1) 전화 메시지 받으면 사무실로 바로 전화하라고 해 주세요.
jeon-hwa me-si-ji bad-ei-myeon sa-mu-sil-lo ba-ro jeon-hwa-
ha-ra-go hae ju-se-yo.

   (2) 내일 4시에 직원회의 있는 거 다들 알고 있소요?
nae-il ne-si-e jig-won-hoe-i in-neun geo da-deul al-go it-ji-yo?

   (3) 어제 다 연락했는데 한 사람만 아직 연락이 안 왔어요.
co-je da yeol-la-kaen-neun-de han sa-ram-man a-jik yeol-lag-i
an dwaess-eo-yo.

(4) 과장님께 급히 연락드릴 일이 있는데 전화번호를
    몰라서요.
gwa-jang-nim-kke geu-pi yeol-lak-deu-ri-l il-i in-neun-de jeon-
    hwa-beon-ho-reul mol-la-seo-yo.

(5) 밤 늦게 전화 드려서 죄송합니다.
bam neut-ge jeon-hwa deu-ryeo-seo joe-song-bam-ni-da.

3. Please translate the following into Korean:

   (1) I would like to make a collect call.
(2) I am sorry. I must have dialed the wrong number.
(3) Please leave a message in the answering machine.
(4) It's ringing, but no one answers the phone.
(5) Maybe the phone is out of order.

4. Please write a set of telephone dialogues.
Lesson 6: Weather and Leisure Activities
Lesson 6: Weather and Leisure Activities

오래간만에 한국에 왔는데 날씨가 너무 열고 긴장해서 밖에 나가기가 싫어요.
o-rae-gan-man-e han-gug-e wan-neun-de nal-ssi-ga neo-mu
dep-go kkeun-kkueun-hae-so bakk-e na-ga-gi-ga sil-le-yo.
It’s been a while since I have been in Korea, but it’s so hot and
humid that I don’t want to go out.

이렇게 더운 날에는 집에서 에어컨 끄어 놓고 시원한 수박이나
먹는 게 최고지.
i-rto-ke deo-un nal-e-neun jib-e-seo e eo-keon teul-eo no-ko si-
won-han su-bag-i-na meong-neun ge choe-go-ji.
During these hot days, it is best to stay home, turn on the air condi-
tioner, and eat some watermelon.

내일 시간 있으면 나와보고 같이 수영장에 갈래?
nae-il si-gan iss-eu-myeon na-ha-go ga-chi su-yeong-jang-e
gal-lae?
Would you go to the swimming pool with me if you have time
tomorrow?

날씨가 너무 더워서 정말 죽겠다.
(I feel like) I am going to die because it’s so hot.

이화에 일기에 보 못봤어요?
a-chim-e il-gi-yo-bo mot bwass-eo-yo?
Didn’t you see the weather forecast in the morning?

내일 오후에 비 온대요.
nae-il o-ha-e bi on-dae-yo.
It’s going to rain tomorrow afternoon.

그래도 상관없어.
gen-rae-do sang-gwan-eops-eo.
It doesn’t matter.
Lesson 6: Weather and Leisure Activities

요즘 방학이라서 해근이가 좀 늦게 일어나거든요.
yo-jeum bang-hag-i-ra-seo hye-getun-i-ga jom neut-ge
il-eo-na-gee-deun-yo.
Since it’s vacation, Hye-Geun gets up a little later these days.

샌디에이고는 보통 날씨가 어때요?
Saen-di-e-i-go nae-tong nal-ssi-ga eo-ttae-yo?
How is the weather in San Diego in general?

샌디에이고 날씨는 항상 비슷해.
San Diego weather is always the same.

여름에도 별로 안 덥고 겨울에도 별로 안 추워.
yeo-reum-e-do byeol-lo an deop-go gyeo-ul-e-do byeol-lo an
chu-wo.
It’s not too hot in the summer, and not too cold in the winter.

한국 봄 가을 날씨하고 비슷한 것 같다.
It seems to be similar to the spring and fall weather in Korea.

보통 겨울에 머칠 비가 좀 오지.
bo-tong gyeo-ul-e myeo-chil bi-ga jom o-ji.
Usually it rains for a few days in the winter.

겨울에 비가 와요? 눈이 아니고요?
gyeo-ul-e bi-ga wa-yo? nun-i a-ni-go-yo?
It rains in winter? It doesn’t snow?

우리 동네는 바다 쪽이라서 눈이 안 왜.
u-ri dong-ne-neun ba-da jjog-i-ra-seo nun-i an wa.
My town is by the ocean so it doesn’t snow.
대화 Model Conversations

(1)

이정호: 할머니, 요즘은 날씨가 정말 많이 달라요. 매일 30도 를 넘는데요.

할머니: 요즘은 여름이 정말 더워지는 것 같아, 내가 어렵 을 때는 이렇게 안 더웠는데.

이정호: 한국뿐만 아니라 요즘은 전 세계적으로 이상기온 현 상이 나타나고 있어요.

할머니: 한국은 여름이 습도가 높아서 더 더워지기 힘들어요. 요 즘은 날에도 낮처럼 덥다.

이정호: 여름, 오랜만에 한국에 왔는데 날씨가 너무 덥고 끊 기 해서 밖에 나가기가 싫네요.

할머니: 이렇게 더운 날에는 집에서 에어컨을 끄고 시원한 수박이나 먹는 게 최고야.

Lesson 6: Weather and Leisure Activities
이대근: 늘어도 10시까지는 금계요. 요즘 방학이라서 해근이가 좀 늦게 일어나거든.

여행: 오빠, 샌디에이고는 보통 날씨가 어때요?
o-ppa, saen-di-e-i-go-neun bo-tong nal-ssi-ga eo-ttae-yo?

이대근: 샌디에이고 날씨는 항상 비슷해. 여름에도 별로 영은 덥고 겨울에도 별로 안 추워.
한국 봄 가을 날씨고 비슷한 것 같아. 보통 겨울에 여럴 비가 좀 오지.

여행: 겨울에 비가 와요? 눈이 아니고요?
gyeo-ul-e bi-ga wa-yo? nun-i a-ni-go-yo?

이대근: 우리 동네는 바다 쪽이라서 눈이 안 와. 산 쪽으로 한
한시간 정도 운전해서 가면 눈이 오지.
u-ri dong-ne-neun ba-da jjog-i-ra-seo nun-i an wa.
san-jjog-eu-ro han han-si-gan jeong-do un-jeonhae-seo
ga-myeon nun-i o-ji.

여행: 와, 상성이 잘 안 되는데요. 같은 샌디에이고인데 한
쪽에는 비가 오고 한쪽에는 눈이 와요?
wa, sang-sang-i jal an doe-neun-de-yo. gat-eun
saen-di-e-i-go-in-de han jjog-e-neun bi-ga o-go
han jjog-e-neun nun-i wa-yo?

이대근: 그게 이상하나? 산은 보통 다른 데보다 더 춤자야.
geu-ge i-sang-ha-ni? San-eun bo-tong da-reun de-bo-da
deo chup-jan-a.

여행: 맞아, 그렇지. 그럴군.
maj-a, geu-geo-ku-na.
영문번역 English Translation

(1)
Lee: Grandma, it's really hot these days. The temperature goes over 30°C every day.
Grandma: It's getting hotter every summer recently. When I was young it was not this hot.
Lee: It is showing unusually high temperatures not only in Korea but also in all around the world these days.
Grandma: It's worse in Korea because it's so humid in the summer. It's hot at night as much as it is in the day.
Lee: Hwewe... it's been a while since I have been in Koréa. But it's so hot and humid that I don't want to go out.
Grandma: During these hot days, it is the best to stay home, turn on the air conditioner, and eat some watermelon.

(2)
Jeong-Ho: Dae-Geun, do you want to go to the swimming pool with me if you have time tomorrow? I feel like I am going to die because it's so hot.
Dae-Geun: Swimming pool? Didn’t you see the weather forecast in the morning? It's going to rain tomorrow afternoon.
Jeong-Ho: Really? But that's OK. I want to go to the indoor pool near grandma’s place.
Dae-Geun: Is that so? But actually I had planned to go to see a movie tomorrow with my little sister Hye-Geun. Then how about we all go to the pool together early, and go to see the movie after lunch? It's a new spy movie and supposed to be really good.
Jeong-Ho: OK. Let's do that. Then will you come to grandma’s place by 9:00 tomorrow morning?
Dae-Geun: I will be there at 10:00 by the latest. Since it's vacation Hye-Geun gets up a little later these days.
어휘 Vocabulary

Nouns / Pronouns

가을 ga-eul  
겨울 gyeo-ul  
근처 geta-cheo  
날씨 nal-ssi  
날 낫  
내일 nae-il  
눈 nun  
다른 대 da-reum de  
대근야 dae-geun-a  
색 daek  
다른 날 deo-un nal  
동네 dong-ne  
동생 dong-saeng  
여친 myeo-chil  
바다 쪽 ba-da jjok  
박 bak  
밤 bam  
방학 bang-hak  
봄 bom  
비 bi  
사촌동생 sa-chon-dong-saeng  
산 san  
산 쪽 san jjok  
샌디에이고 saen-di-e-i-go  
수박 su-bak  
수영장 su-yoeng-jang  
시장 seup-do  
심내 수영장 sil-laeh su-yoeng-jang  
아침 a-chim  
fall, autumn  
winter  
near, nearby  
weather, climate  
day  
tomorrow  
snow  
other places  
Hey, Dae-Geun  
house (hon.)  
hot day  
village, town  
younger sibling  
several days  
sea side  
outside  
night  
(school) vacation  
spring  
rain  
cousin  
mountain  
mountain side  
San Diego  
watermelon  
swimming pool  
humidity  
indoor swimming pool  
morning

Verbs

가다 ga-da  
갈다 gat-da  
곤곤하다 kkeun-kkeun-ha-da  
가다 na-ga-da  
나타나다 na-ta-na-da  
감다 neon-ta  
눕다 nop-da  
눈이 오다 nun-i o-da  
when (someone was)  
young  
air conditioner  
summer  
afternoon  
these days  
we, us  
abnormal temperature  
effect  
weather forecast  
house  
secret agent movie,  
spy movie  
one hour  
one side  
Korea  
grandmother  
grandmother’s house  
(hon.)  
(man’s) older brother  
Hye-Geun  
30 degrees Celsius/  
Centigrade (30°C)
Lesson 6: Weather and Leisure Activities

Adverbs / Conjunctions

그래도 geu-rae-do  
그러자 geu-reo-ja  
그럼 geu-reom  
그럼구나 geu-reo-ku-na  
너무 neo-mu  
늘게 nut-ge  
늘어도 nuj-eo-do

even it is true  
let's do that  
then  
that's right  
too, too much  
late  
at latest
문법 Grammar

(1) The Intimate Speech Style and the Plain Speech Style

The intimate speech style is used between people who share a close relationship, such as spouses, siblings, and childhood friends. Intimate speech uses the pattern Verb + 〜아/어 (a/eo) where

〜아 (a) is attached if the final vowel of the verb stem is either 0 (a) or 오 (o)

많다 (man-ta) “to be many”
→ 많 (man) + 〜아 (a)
→ 많아 (man-a)

〜아 (a) is omitted if the verb stem ends with the vowel 0 (a) or 오 (ae) without a final consonant

지다 (ja-da) “to sleep”
→ 자 (ja) + 〜아 (a)
→ 자 (ja)

〜어 is attached for all other verb stems

먹다 (meok-da) “to eat”
→ 먹 (meok) + 〜어 (eo)
→ 먹어 (meog-eo)

〜어 (eo) is attached to the any past tense marker 〜었/었 (at/eot)

〜아 (ya) is attached after the copula 0 (i), as 인니아 (na-ya) “(it’s) me,” or 갈 거야 (gal kkeo-ya) “(I) will go”

There are also special cases when contraction and/or omission occurs:

- With the predicate 〜하다 (ha-da), the stem 〜하다 (ha) + 〜아 (a) contracts to 〜해 (hae)
  전화하다 (jeon-hwa-ha-da) “to make a telephone call”
  전화해 (jeon-hwa-hae)

- With verb stems that end in 오, there is a contraction to 와 (wa)
  오다 (o-da) “to come”
  오 (o) + 〜아 (a)
  와 (wa)

- With verb stems that end in 음, there is a contraction to 워
  주다 (ju-da) “to give”
  주 (ju) + 〜어 (eo)
  워 (jwo)

- With irregular verbs that end in 〜irda, the 〜은 is omitted and vowel contracts to 〜워
  닦다 (deop-ida) “to be hot”
  닦 (deop) + 〜어 (eo)
  더 (deo) + 음 (u) + 〜어 (eo)
  더워 (deo-wo)

The one exception is 들다 (dop-da) “to help,” which has a 와(wa) contraction.

With other endings, one speaks in the intimate style form by omitting the marker 〜요 (yo) from the polite style form.
Lesson 6: Weather and Leisure Activities

The plain speech style is used extensively in published writing, including newspapers, magazines, and academic journals. It can be used in conjunction with the intimate style, especially when speaking to a child, a younger sibling, or a childhood friend. Different sentence endings are used according to the type of sentence:

- With a statement, use ~다 (da).
- With a question, use ~니? (ni?) or ~나? (na?).
- With a request, use ~아/어라 (a/eo-ra).
- With a suggestion, use ~지 (ja) as in 가다 (ga-da), 가나? (ga-ni?), 가라 (ga-ra), and 가자 (ga-ja).

(2) ~아/어 지다 (a/eo ji-da) “become”

The descriptive verb pattern verb stem + ~아/어 지다 expresses a change from one state (or condition) to another. Since it denotes a state of becoming or happening, it changes a descriptive verb into an active verb. Descriptive verbs using the construction ~아/어 지다 denote the resulting state or condition, as in 여름에는 날씨가 더워져요 (yeo-reum-e-neun nalsi-ga dewo-wo-jyeye-yo) “In summer, the weather becomes hotter.” If a present state is a result of a change in the past, the past tense form is used, as in 방이 더워졌어요. (bang-i deo-wo-wo-jyeyoss-eo-yo) “The room has become dirty.”

(3) ~아/어 요 (jan-a-yo) “..., you know”

When the speaker assumes that the listener will agree with him/her, or wants to reconfirm facts, the speaker will use the pattern ~아/어 요 at the end of the verb stem. Although this pattern is derived from the negative question ~지 않아요?, there is no negative connotation. As it is not a question, there is no rising intonation.

 이번 주가 휴가잖아요.
(i-beon ju-ga hyu-ga jan-a-yo.)
“This week is my vacation.”

휴가동안 집에서 쉬고 싶어요.
(hyu-ga-dong-an jib-sseo swil kkeo-jan-a-yo.)
“You are going to rest at home during the vacation.”

(4) ~기로 하다 (gi-ro ha-da) “plan to, decide to”

One uses the pattern ~기로 하다 (gi-ro ha-da) to express or determine a decision. This pattern expresses more resolve than other patterns that convey a decidedness to do something. One uses ~(으)ㄹ~ 기로 하다 ((eu)ll-kka ha-da), ~(으)ㄹ~ 기에요 ((eu)ll kkeeye-yo), or ~(으)ㄹ~ 해요 (gi-ro haess-eo-yo) to express the increased degree of resolve. With statements, one always uses the past tense marker ~(으)로 해요 (gi-ro haess-eo-yo). The present tense form, ~(으)로 해요 (gi-ro ha-ye-yo), always indicates a suggestion or recommendation.

여름 휴가 동안에 한국에 가기로 해요.
(yeo-reum hyu-ga-dong-an han-gug-e ga-gi-rol haess-eo-yo.)
I decided to go to Korea during summer vacation.

여름 휴가 동안에 한국에 가기로 해요.
(yeo-reum hyu-ga-dong-an han-gug-e ga-gi-rol ha-ye-yo.)
Let’s go to Korea during summer vacation.

(5) ~보다 (bo-da (deo/deol)) “more/less than~”

Use the pattern noun 1 + ~(으)보다 + noun 2 with the optional adverb 더 (deo) “more,” or 덜 (deol) “less” when comparing two or more items. The first item of comparison is attached to ~(으)보다. The following item comes directly after it. Although the order of items can be changed, it is important to note that the second item should be
used to describe the comparison. When necessary, use the pattern ᵇ동해서 to convey the expression between or among. To express a superlative construction (the most), use 제일 or 가장. In written Korean, 가장 is preferred.

미국이 한국보다 더 커요.
(mi-gug-i han-guk-bo-da deo keo-yo)
America is bigger than Korea.

유미가 유흥이보다 덜 예뻐요.
(yu-mi-ga yu-jin-i-bo-da deol ye-ppeo-yo)
Yumi is less pretty than Yujin.

(6) ~-(으)나 (으)-na “or something”

Use the pattern ~-(으)나 to make a mild suggestion. When this pattern is used, there is no implication that the suggestion given is the best or only one, and the item suggested is not absolute or fixed. Rather, it is one of many possible alternatives. In this instance, ~-(으)나 means “just” or “or something.”

커피나 한잔 할까요?
keo-pi-na han-jan hal-kka-yo?
Shall we have a cup of coffee or something together?

(7) Adverb Formation

To express the way that something has occurred, attach ~게(ge) to an descriptive verb stem to form an adverb. The adverbial form ~게 (ge) refers to the manner or way in which something happens.

재미있어 to be interesting  재미있게 interestingly
jae-mi-it-da        jae-mi-it-ge

(8) ~-(으)려 ((eu)-reo) “to do ~, in order to~”

Use the pattern ~-(으)려, “in order to,” to show the purpose of an action. It is used with directional verbs (examples include 가다, 오다, 다니다) to indicate the purpose of going or coming.

점심 먹고 영화 보려 가자.
jeom-sim-meok-go yeong-hwa-bo-reo ga-ja.
Let’s go to see a movie after we eat lunch.
참고학습 Further Study

(1) 날씨와 계절에 관한 표현들

봄 bom
여름 yeo-reum
가을 ga-eul
겨울 geo-wul

일기예보 il-gi-ye-bo
온도 on-do
영상 yeong-sang
영하 yeong-ha
섭씨 seop-ssi
화씨 hwa-ssi

기온이 낮다 gi-on-i nat-da
기온이 높다 gi-on-i tae-da
날씨가 나쁘다 nal-ssi-ga na-peu-da
날씨가 좋다 nal-ssi-ga jo-ta

유연하다 kkeun-kkeun-ha-da
구름이 까다 gu-reum-i kki-da
눈이 오다 nun-i o-da
비가 오다 bi-ga o-da
바람이 불다 ba-rum-i bul-da
얼음이 엎다 eol-eum-i eol-da

덥다 deop-da
따듯하다 tta-ttcu-ta-da
시원하다 si-won-ha-da
ANTLR하다 saal-ssal-ha-da
춥다 chup-da

spring
summer
fall
winter

weather forecast
temperature
above zero
below zero
Celsius
Fahrenheit

the temperature is low
the temperature is high
the weather is bad
the weather is good

to be muggy
to get cloudy
to snow
to rain
the wind blows
the ice freezes

to get hot
to become clean
to get cold
to get cloudy

(2) 여가활동에 관한 표현들

Sports

권투를 하다 gwon-tu-reul ha-da
to box
to get hot
레슬링을 하다 re-seul-ling-eul ha-da
to wrestle
to get become clean
산책을 하다 san-chaeg-eul ha-da
to go for a walk
to get cold
수영을 하다 su-yeong-eul ha-da
to swim
to get cloudy
조깅을 하다 jo-ging-eul ha-da
to jog
to travel

농구를 하다 nong-gu-reul ha-da
to play basketball
to play soccer
미식축구를 하다
mi-sik-chuk-gu-reul ha-da
to play football
to play baseball
배구를 하다 bae-gu-reul ha-da
to play volleyball
to get cloudy
야구를 하다 ya-gu-reul ha-da
to play baseball
to get hot
축구를 하다 chuk-gu-reul ha-da
to play baseball
to play tennis
등산을 하다/가다
deung-san-eul ha-da/ga-da
to climb a mountain
to play tennis
여행을 하다/가다
eyo-haeng-eul ha-da/ga-da
to travel
to swim
스케이트를 타다
to ski
seu-ke-i-teu-reul ta-da
to ride a bicycle
스키를 타다
to ride a bicycle
seu-ki-reul ta-da
자전거를 타다
to ride a bicycle
ja-jeon-geo-reul ta-da
골프를 치다 gol-peu-reul chi-da  
t탁구를 치다 tak-gu-reul chi-da  
테니스를 치다 te-ni-seu-reul chi-da  
to play golf  
to play ping-pong  
to play tennis

Musical instruments

플룻을 봉다 peul-lus-eul bul-da  
클라리넷을 봉다 keul-la-ri-net-eul bul-da  
트럼펫을 봉다 teu-reom-pes-eul bul-da  
피아노를 치다 pi-a-no-reul chi-da  
드럼을 치다 deu-reom-eul chi-da  
기타를 치다 gi-ta-reul chi-da  
바이올린을 켜다 va-i-ol-in-eul kyeo-da  
첼로를 켜다 chel-lo-reul kyeo-da  
비올라를 켜다 vi-ol-la-reul kyeo-da  
to play the flute  
to play the clarinet  
to play the trumpet  
to play the piano  
to play the drums  
to play the guitar  
to play the violin  
to play the cello  
to play the viola

Etc.

낚시를 가다/하다 nak-si-reul ga-da/ha-da  
언극 구경을 가다/하다 yeon-geak gu-gyeong-eul ga-da/ha-da  
영화 구경을 가다/하다 yeong-hwa gu-gyeong-eul ga-da/ha-da  
가드놀이를 하다 ka-deu nol-i-reul ha-da  
컴퓨터 게임을 하다 keom-pyu-teo ge-im-eul ha-da  
to go fishing  
to go to see a play  
to go to see a movie  
to play a card game  
to play a computer game

노래방에 가다 no-rae-bang-e ga-da  
미술관에 가다 mi-sul-gwan-e ga-da  
박물관에 가다 bang-mul-gwan-e ga-da  
음악회에 가다 eum-a-koe-e ga-da  
to go to a karaoke room  
to go to an art gallery  
to go to a museum;  
to go to a concert

비디오를 보다 vi-di-o-reul bo-da  
영화를 보다 yeong-hwa-reul bo-da  
텔레비전을 보다 tel-le-bi-jeon-eul bo-da  
to watch a videotape  
to watch a movie  
to watch TV

그림을 그리다 geu-rim-eul geu-ri-da  
노래를 부르다 no-rac-reul bu-reu-da  
사진을 찍다 sa-jin-eul jjik-da  
음악을 들다 eum-ag-eul deut-da  
잠을 자다 jam-eul ja-da  
책을 읽다 chaeg-eul iik-da  
춤을 추다 chum-eul chu-da  
트럼프를 치다 teu-reom-pes-reul chi-da  
to draw a picture  
to sing a song  
to take a photograph  
to listen to music  
to sleep  
to read a book  
to dance  
to play a card game
Lesson 6: Weather and Leisure Activities

연습문제 Exercises

1. Please respond to the following:

(1) 한국은 여름에 보통 날씨가 어때요?
   han-gug-eun yeo-reum-e bo-tong nal-ssi-ga co-ttae-yo?

(2) 내일 같이 점심먹고 영화 보러 가실래요?
    nae-il ga-chi jeom-sim-meok-go yeong-hwa bo-reo ga-sil-lae-yo?

(3) 어떤 스포츠를 좋아하세요?
    eo-teo seu-po-cheu-reul jo-a-ha-se-yo?

(4) 주말에는 보통 뭐 하세요?
    ju-mal-e-neun bo-tong mwo ha-se-yo?

(5) 이번 휴가동안 뭐 하셨어요?
    i-beon hyu-ga-ttong-an mwo ha-syeoss-eo-yo?

2. Please translate the following into English:

(1) 요즘은 전 세계적으로 이상기온 현상이 나타나잖아요.
    yo-jeum-eun jeon se-ge-jeog-eu-ro i-sang-gi-on hyeon-sang-i na-ta-najjan-a-yo.

(2) 한국은 여름에 습도가 높아서 더 열대기가 활동하다.

(3) 날씨가 너무 덥고 고통이어서 밖에 나가기가 실패.

(4) 사실은 매일 친구하고 같이 영화보러 가기로 했거든요.

(5) 새로 나온 영화의 첫번째에 아주 재미있었어요.
    sae-ro na-on cheop-bo-yeong-hwa-in-de a-ju jae-mi-it-dae-yo.
3. Please translate into Korean:

(1) I like to watch TV during the weekend, but this weekend was too busy.
(2) My hobby is taking pictures, and my brother's is playing a piano.
(3) In Korea, the weather during winter is very cold and windy.
(4) When I have time, I love to visit a museum or an art gallery.
(5) We will have a lot of rain in San Diego tomorrow.

4. Please write a paragraph describing the weather in your town.

Lesson 7: Shopping
표현 Patterns

어서 오세요. 뒤 찾으세요?
eo-seo- o-se-yo. mwo chaj-eu-se-yo?
Welcome. (lit. Come quickly). What are you looking for?

바지 한 별 사려고 하는데 구경 좀 해도 돼요?
bai-ji han beol sa-ryeo-go ha-neun-de gu-gyeong jom hae-do
dwae-yo?
I am trying to buy a pair of pants. Is it OK if I look around?

이리 들어오세요.
i-ri deul-eo-o-se-yo.
Come on in here, please.

어떤 색깔 바지를 찾으시는데요?
eo-teon saek-kkal ba-ji-reul chaj-eu-si-neun-de-yo?
What color of pants are you looking for?

그냥 아무 옷이나 잘 어울리는 무난한 색깔이면 좋겠는데요.
geu-nyang a-mu os-e-na jal co-ul-li-neun mu-nan-han
saek-kkal-i-myeon jo-kken-neun-de-yo.
A plain color—one that fits well with any clothes—would be good.

그럼 짧은 청색이나 연한 갈색이 좋겠네요.
geu-reom jie-eun cheong-saeg-i-na yeon-han gal-saeg-i
jo-kken-ne-yo.
Then either navy blue or light brown would be good.

잠깐만요. 제가 좀 찾아 볼게요.
jam-kkan-man-yo. je-ga jom chaj-a bo-kke-yo.
Just a moment, please. I will check and find some.

Lesson 7: Shopping

사이즈는 몇 입으세요?
ssa-i-jeu-neun myeot ib-eu-se-yo?
What's your waist size?

32나 33이요.
sam-sib-i-na sam-sip-sam-i-yo.
Either 32 or 33.

이건 어떠세요?
i-geon eo-teo-se-yo?
How about this?

이게 요즘 재일 많이 팔리는 디자인인데요.
This is the design that sells the most these days.

손님한테도 잘 어울리겠네요.
son-nim-han-te-do jal co-ul-li-gen-neun-de-yo.
It seems to be go well with you, too.

관참아 보이네요.
gwaen-chan-a bo-i-ne-yo.
It looks good.

이거 한번 입어 볼 수도 돼요?
i-geo han-beon ib-eo bwa-do dwae-yo?
Is it OK if I try it on?

지족에 탈의실이 보이시죠?
jeo-jhog-e tal-ui-sil-I bo-i-si-jyo?
Can you see the dressing room over there?
저를 따라 오세요. 제가 모셔다 드릴게요.
Please follow me. I will take you there.

어떡하세요? 제가 보기에 잘 맞는 것 같은데요.
How is it? To me, it looks good on you.

잘 맞네요.
jal man-ne-yo.
It fits well.

그럼 이거 드라이 해야 되는 거 아닌가요?
geu-reon-de i-geo deu-ra-i hae-ya doe-neun geo a-nin-ga-yo?
But doesn’t this need to be dry-cleaned?

오줌앤 젤랑 바지도 드라이 안 해도 되는 게 많이 나와요.
yo-jeum-en jeong-jang-ba-jii-do deu-ra-i an hae-do doe-neun ge
man-i na-wa-yo.
A lot of dress pants that come out these days don’t need to be
dry-cleaned.

그냥 세탁기에 넣고 돌리셔도 돼요.
You can just put it in a washer and run.

잘 넣어서 말리면 다리질도 안 하셔도 되고요.
If you shake it well and line-dry, you don’t have to iron it.

참 편리해서 마음에 드네요.
cham pyeo-li-hae-seo ma-eum-e deu-ne-yo.
I like it because it is convenient (to handle).
그리고 혹시 할아버지가 마음에 안 들어 하시면 바꾸려 와도 되지요?
geu-rae-do hok-si hal-a-beo-ji-ga ma-eum-e an deul-eo ha-si-myeon ba-kku-reo wa-do doe-jii-yo?
But just in case if my grandpa doesn’t like it, I can exchange it, right?

30일 안에 오시면 언제든지 교환해 드려요.
sam-sib-il an-e o-si-myeon eon-je deun-ji gyo-hwan-hae deu-ryeo-yo.
If you come within 30 days, we will exchange it for you.

영수증 꼭 가지고 오시고요.
yeong-su-jeung kkok ga-ji-go o-si-go-yo.
Please be sure to bring your receipt.
대화 Model Conversations

(1)

질문: 어서 오세요, 손님, 뭐 찾으세요?

이정호: 바지 한 벌 사라고 하는데 구경 좀 해도 돼요?

질문: 그림요. 이리 들어오세요. 어떤 색깔 바지를 찾으시는 데요?

이정호: 그렇요. 어떤 색깔 바지를 찾으시는 데요?

질문: geu-reom-yo i-ri deul eo-o-se-yo, eo-teeon saek-kkal ba-ji-reul chaj-eu-si-neun-de-yo?

이정호: 그림 작을 벌이라도 않겠어. 무난한 색깔이면 좋겠는데요.


이정호: 그럼 작을 청색이나 연한 갈색이 좋겠네요. 잠깐만요.


이정호: 제가 좀 찾아 봅시죠. 사이즈는 몇 입으세요?

질문: je-ga jom chaj-a bol-kke-yo. ssa-i-jeu-neun myeot ib-eu-se-yo?

이정호: 32나 33이요.

질문: sam-sib-i-na sam-sip-sam-i-yo.

이정호: 이런 어때세요? 이게 요즘 제일 많이 팔리는 디자인이 인기가요. 손님한테도 잘 아들리겠습니다.


이정호: 판매아 보이네요. 어게 한번 입어 보고 묻어요.

질문: gwaen-chan-a bo-i-ne-yo. i-geon han-beon ib-eo bwa-do dwac-yo?

이정호: 그럼요. 저쪽에 탈실이 보이시죠? 따라 오세요. 제가 모셔다 드릴게요.


(2)

질문: 어때세요? 제가 보러왔을 봐. 생각한 것 같은데요.

이정호: 네, 잘 맞네요. 그런데 이게 드리아 해야 되는 거 아닌가요?

질문: ne, jal man-ne-yo. geu-reon-de j-i-geo deu-ra-i hae-ya doe-neun geo a-nin-ga-yo?

이정호: 아니요. 요즘엔 장장 바뀌도 드라이 안 해도 되는게 많이 나와요.


이정호: 그럼 세탁기에 넣고 두리셔도 되요. 잘 탈어서 말리면 다양한게 안 하셔도 되고요.


이정호: 그래요. 참고로해서 마음에 드네요. 가격은 얼마나 하는데요?

질문: geu-rae-yo? cham pyeol-li-hae-seo ma-eum-e deu-ne-yo, ga-gyeog-eun eol-ma-na ha-neun-de-yo?

질문: 정가는 10만원인데 요즘 세일기간이어서 25프로 세일해 드리고 있어요.


이정호: 그럼이거 두 볼 다 주세요. 카드도 받으시죠?

질문: geu-reom-i-geo du-beol da ju-se-yo, ka-deu-do bad-eu-si-jyo?
정원: 그럼요. 이쪽으로 오세요.
geu-reom-yo. i-jjog-eu-ro o-se-yo.

(3)
이정호: 아직, 벽터이하고 와이셔츠도 좀 빼면 좋겠는데요.
a-cham, nek-ta-i-ha-go wa-i-syeo-cheu-do jom
bwass-eu-myeon jo-kken-neun-de-yo.

정원: 그래세요? 손님이 익으실 거예요, 아니면 누구한테 샌들하실 거예요?
geu-reo-se-yo? son-nim-i ib-eu-sil kkeo-ye-yo,
a-ni-myeon nu-gu-han-te seon-mul-ha-sil kkeo-ye-yo?

이정호: 할아버지 드릴 건데요. 좀 점집은 걸로 몇 가지 챙 보어요 주세요.
hal-a-beo-ji deu-ril kkeon-de-yo. jom jeom-jan-eun
geol-lo myeot ga-ji jom bo-yeo ju-se-yo.

정원: 어머, 요즘엔 나이드신 분들이 점집은 색깔을 더 심어 하세요.
eo-meo, yo-jeum-en na-i-deu-sin bun-deul-i jeom-jan-eun
saek-kkal-eul deo sil-eo-ha-se-yo.
요즘엔 노인용으로도 이렇게 선뜻하고 밝은 색상들이 많이 나와요.
yo-jeum-en no-in-yong-eu-ro-do i-reo-ke san-teu-ta-go
balg-eun saek-sang-deul-i man-i na-wo-yo.
이것 보세요. 이 거지색 와이셔츠하고 줄무늬 벽타이가 잘 어울릴 것 같아요.
i-geot bo-se-yo. i gyeo-ja-saek wa-i-syeo-cheu-ha-go
jul-mu-ni nek-ta-i-ga jal eo-ul-nil kkeot gat-eun-de-yo.

이정호: 좀... 제가 보기엔 괜찮은 것 같아요.
heum... je-ga bo-gi-en gwaen-chan-eun geot
gat-eun-de-yo.
그래도 혹시 할아버지가 마음에 안 들어 하시면 바꾸려 왜도 되지요?
geu-rae-do hok-si hal-a-beo-ji-ga ma-eum-e an deul-eo
ha-si-myeon ba-kku-reo wa-do doe-ji-yo?
Lesson 7: Shopping

(3)
Lee: Oh, I want to see some ties and dress shirts, too.
Salesperson: Really? Is it for yourself or a gift for someone else?
Lee: It's for my grandpa. Can you show me some of the plain color ones?
Salesperson: Oh no, actually elderly people like plain colors less than young people do these days. There are many vivid and bright color items, like this, for elderly people. Check this out. I think this dark yellow dress shirt and striped tie would match well.
Lee: Hmm... I think it will look alright. But if my grandpa doesn't like it, I can still exchange it, right?
Salesperson: Of course. If you come within 30 days, you can exchange it. Please be sure to bring your receipt.

영문번역 English Translation

(1)
Salesperson: Hello. May I help you?
Lee: I am trying to buy a pair of pants. Can I look around?
Salesperson: Sure. Come on in, please. What color of pants are you looking for?
Lee: A plain color one that goes well with any clothes would be great.
Salesperson: Then either navy blue or light brown would be good. One moment, please. I will check and find some. What’s your waist size?
Lee: Either 32 or 33.
Salesperson: How about this? This design sells the most these days. I think it will look good on you, too.
Lee: It looks good. Can I try it on?
Salesperson: Of course. Can you see the dressing room over there? Please follow me; I will take you there.

(2)
Salesperson: How is it? I think it looks good on you.
Lee: Yes, it fits well. But doesn’t this need to be dry-cleaned?
Salesperson: No, these days we get a lot of dress pants that don’t need to be dry-cleaned. You can just put it in a washer. If you shake it well and line-dry, you don’t have to iron it.
Lee: Really? I like that it is convenient. How much is it?
Salesperson: The regular price is 100,000 won, but there’s a sale, so it will be 25% off.
Lee: Then I will get two pairs altogether. You accept credit cards, right?
Salesperson: Sure. Come on this way.
Lesson 7: Shopping

**Verb**

가지고 오다 ga-ji-go o-da

편하다 gwaen-chan-ta

편할 여도 gwaen-chan-a bo-i-da

교환해 드리다 gyo-hwan-hae deu-ri-da

구경하다 gu-gyeong-ha-da

나오다 na-o-da

نظدة neo-ta

다듬하다 da-rim-jil-ha-da

들리다 dol-li-da

드라이하다 deu-ra-i ha-da

드려오다 deul-eo-o-da

따라오다 tta-ra-o-da

마음에 들다 ma-eum-e deul-da

마음에 안 들어하다 ma-eum-e an deul-eo-ha-da

알리다 mal-li-da

오셔다 드리다 no-syeo-da deu-ri-da

우난하다 mu-nan-ha-da

바꾸려 오다 ba-kkw-reo o-da

받다 bat-da

받다 balk-da

보다 bo-da

to bring something
to be OK
to look good
to exchange (hon.)
to just look around
to come out
to put inside
to iron
to turn
to dry clean
to enter
to follow
to like, to fit someone’s taste
not to like
to dry
to take someone (hon.)
to be decent
to come to exchange
to receive
to be bright
to see
보여 주다  bo-yo-ja-da
보이다    bo-i-da
사다     sa-da
산뜻하다 san-teu-ta-da
선물하다 sean-mul-ha-da
서열해 드리는 se-il-hae deu-ri-da
실어하다 sil-eo-ha-da
어울리다 eo-ul-li-da
연하다 yeon-ha-da
오다 o-da
입다 ip-da
입어 보다 ib-eo-bo-da
맞다 jal mat-da
검다 jeom-jan-ta
خد 다 jo-ta
주다 ju-da
줄두나 jul-mu-ni
질다 jat-da
겹다 chat-da
겹어 보다 chaj-a-bo-da
떨다 teol-da
팔리다 pal-li-da
편리하다 pyeol-li-ha-da
to show
to be seen
to buy
to be neat and fresh
to give a present
to discount (hon.)
to dislike
to match well
to be light
to come
to wear
to try on (clothes), to wear
to fit well
to be decent
to be good
to give
stripe
to be dark
to look for, to find
to look for
to shake off
to be sold
to be convenient

Adverbs / Pre-Nouns / Conjunctions

그냥 geu-nyang
그레도 geu-rae-do
그렇게? geu-reo-se-yo
그런데 geu-reon-de
그럼 geu-reomi
그럼요 geu-reom-yo
곳 kkok
많이 man-i

just, only
even it is true
really?
but, by the way
then
of course
for sure
a lot

아니면 a-ni-nyeon
아무 a-mu
아침 a-cham
어때세요? eo-tteo-se-yo
어떤 eo-tteon
어미 eo-meo
어서 eo-seo
여제ืน 지 eon-je-deun-jii
얼마나 eol-ma-na
요즘 yo-jeum
이렇게 i-reo-ke:
어리 i-ri
잘 jal
장관한 jam-kkan-man
제가 보기에 je-ga bo-gi-en
제일 je-il
좋 jom
창 cham
한번 han-beon
혹시 hok-si
مم... heum

or, if not ~
any
oh,
How about ~
which, a certain
uh-uh (no)
quickly, please
whenever
how much
these days
like this
this way
well
for a minute
in my point of view
the most, the first
a little, please
oh, once
just in case
hmmm...
### 문법 Grammar

#### (1) Passive Verbs

In English, one often hears such sentence structures as "the window was broken." This is the passive form. In Korean, the passive construction is formed by attaching the suffix -이(i), -이(i) (hi), -이(li), or -이 (gi) to a verb stem. Since all verbs cannot be made passive, the ones that can must be memorized along with the suffix used.

With passive verbs, the subject (which would be the object of a transitive sentence) is marked by the subject particles 0(i) or 가(ga), or the topic markers 은(eun) or 는(neun). The agent (the subject of a transitive sentence) is marked with the dative particle 한테 (han-te) when the agent is a person or animal. If the agent is an inanimate object, the particle 에 (e) is used. Below are some verbs classified according to passive suffix.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Active</th>
<th>Passive</th>
<th>Sample Sentence</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>보다</td>
<td>보이다</td>
<td>저기 신호등이 보여요.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bo-da</td>
<td>bo-i-da</td>
<td><em>jëo-gi sin-ho-deung-i</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to see</td>
<td>to be seen</td>
<td>I see the traffic light over there.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>쓰다</td>
<td>쓰이다</td>
<td>이 약이 감기에 잘 쓰여요.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sseu-da</td>
<td>sseu-i-da</td>
<td><em>i-yag-i gam-gi-e jal</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to use</td>
<td>to be used</td>
<td>This medicine is often used for colds.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>닫다</td>
<td>닫히다</td>
<td>바람에 문이 닫혔어요.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dat-da</td>
<td>da-chi-da</td>
<td><em>ba-ram-e mun-i</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to close</td>
<td>to be closed</td>
<td>The door became closed because of the wind.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Active</th>
<th>Passive</th>
<th>Sample Sentence</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>막다</td>
<td>막히다</td>
<td>차가 많이서 같이 막혀요.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mak-da</td>
<td>ma-ki-da</td>
<td><em>cha-ga man-a-seo</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to block</td>
<td>to be blocked</td>
<td><em>gil-i ma-kyeo-yo</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>잡다</td>
<td>잡히다</td>
<td>도둑이 경찰한테 잡혔어요.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jap-da</td>
<td>ja-pi-da</td>
<td><em>do-dug-i gyeong-chal-han-te</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to catch</td>
<td>to be caught</td>
<td><em>ja-pyeoss-ëo-yo</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>물다</td>
<td>물리다</td>
<td>우체부가 개한테 물렸어요.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mul-da</td>
<td>mul-li-da</td>
<td><em>u-che-bu-ga gae-han-te</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to bite</td>
<td>to be bitten</td>
<td><em>mul-lyeoss-ëo-yo</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>열다</td>
<td>열리다</td>
<td>가게문이 열렸어요.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yeol-da</td>
<td>yeol-li-da</td>
<td><em>ga-ge-mun-i yeol-lyeoss-ëo-yo</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to open</td>
<td>to be open</td>
<td>The store door is open.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>놀다</td>
<td>놀리다</td>
<td>요즘 집이 잘 놀려요.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pal-da</td>
<td>pal-li-da</td>
<td><em>yo-jeum jib-i jal pal-lyeo-yo</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to sell</td>
<td>to be sold</td>
<td>Houses are sold quickly these days.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>빼다</td>
<td>빼기다</td>
<td>개한테 사과를 빼겠어요.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ppat-da</td>
<td>ppat-gi-da</td>
<td><em>gae-han-te sa-gwa-reul</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to take away</td>
<td>to be taken away</td>
<td><em>ppaat-gyeoss-ëo-yo</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to take away</td>
<td>to be taken away</td>
<td>My apple has been taken away by the dog.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Lesson 7: Shopping

(2) ~고 있다 (go it-da) vs. ~고 계시다 (go gye-si-da)

progressive “be ...ing”

When indicating the progression or repetition of an action, add the suffix ~고 있다 (go it-da) to the verb. The honorific form uses the suffix ~고 계시다 (go gye-si-da). The past tense plain uses the suffix ~고 있었어요 (go iss-eoss-co-yo), and the past tense honorific uses ~고 계셨어요 (go gye-syeoss-co-yo).

The future tense uses ~고 있을 거예요 (go iss-eul kkeo-ye-yo) and ~고 계실 거예요 (go gye-sil kkeo-ye-yo), respectively.

(3) ~(으)면 (eu)-myeon “if, when—”

Use the suffix ~(으)면 (eu)-myeon to create either a conditional statement (in English, one that uses “if”), or to express when. When the verb stem ends in a consonant other than 음, use ~(으)면 (eu-myeon). When it ends in a vowel or 음, use ~(으)면 (myeon).

(4) ~(으)ㄹ게요 (eu)-kke-yo) vs. ~(으)ㄹ래요 (eu)-lae-yo)

and expressing intention

The ending ~(으)ㄹ게요 (eu)-kke-yo) expresses the determination of or a promise by the speaker to do something. It denotes willingness,

assurance, and promise. The English equivalent is “I am going to do.” It may be used only in the first person and only in the form of statement. It cannot be used in a question. When expressing intention in a statement, use the sentence ending ~(으)ㄹ래요 ~(eu)-lae-yo. Also use it when asking the intention of the listener. It denotes intention and assertion. The English equivalent is “planning to do.” These patterns occur only in casual language. In a formal setting, one uses ~(으)시겠습니까? (eu-si-get-seumn-ni-kka?) instead of ~(으)ㄹ게요, and ~(으)로다 (eu-seumn-ni-da) instead of ~(으)ㄹ래요.

Examples:

저는 비빔밥을 먹을래요.
joe-neun bi-bim-ppab-eul meog-eul-kke-yo.
I am going to eat bi-bim-ppap. (casual)

저는 비빔밥을 먹을게요.
joe-neun bi-bim-ppab-eul meog-eul-laeyo.
I am planning to eat bi-bim-ppap. (casual)

저는 비빔밥을 먹겠습니다.
joe-neun bi-bim-ppab-eul meok-get-seumn-ni-da.
I am planning to eat bi-bim-ppap. (formal)

비빔밥을 먹을래요?
bi-bim-ppab-eul meog-eul-laeyo?
Are you planning to eat bi-bim-ppap? (casual)

비빔밥을 드시겠습니까?
bi-bim-ppab-eul deu-si-get-seumn-ni-kka?
Are you planning to eat bi-bim-ppap? (formal)
(5) Noun Formation: ~는 것 (neun geot) vs. ~わかり (gi)

To express a verb as a noun, add the suffix ~는 것을 to the verb. This is the equivalent of adding the suffix -ing to a verb in English. Depending on the sentence, a particle may be added, causing contraction. In writing, the forms ~는 것이, ~는 것을, and ~는 것은 are not shortened into contractions. Contractions are used colloquially. The contractions occur like so:

- ~는 것이 (neun geot-i) → ~는 게 (neun ge)
- ~는 것을 (neun geot-eul) → ~는 걸 (neun geol)
- ~는 것은 (neun geot-eun) → ~는 건 (neun geon)

The ending ~가(-gi) is also used to form a noun from a verb. Sometimes ~는 것 and ~가 are used interchangeably, but not always. To make a list of things to do, ~가 is used.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>Sample</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>walk</td>
<td>geot-da</td>
<td>걸다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>geot-da</td>
<td>가미 / 걷는 것</td>
<td>걸기 / 걷는 것</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sing</td>
<td>no-rae-ha-da</td>
<td>노래하다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>syo-ping-ga-da</td>
<td>syo-ping-ga</td>
<td>syo-ping가기 / syo-ping하는 것</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ja-da</td>
<td>ja-da</td>
<td>자다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sleep</td>
<td>sleep</td>
<td>자다</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(6) Permission ~아/어도 되다 (a/eo-do doe-da) vs. Prohibition ~으면 안된다 ((eu)-myeon an-doe-da)

To ask for or grant permission to do something in a general sense, use the pattern ~아/어도 되요 (a/eo-do dae-yo). The negative forms are 안 ~아/어도 되요 (an ~a/eo-do dae-yo) and ~지 않아도 되요 (ji an-a-do dae-yo). To ask for or grant permission to do something in particular, do not use ~되다 (doe-da). Use ~돌다 (jo-ta) or ~)set 다 (gwaen-chan-ta) instead.

To refuse permission, forbid an action, or issue a warning, use the ending ~(으)면 안되요 ((eu)-myeon an-dae-yo), which directly translates as “it is not all right if . . .”

(7) Expressing “old”

Although old in English signifies “aged” in most instances, the Korean equivalents have distinct connotations and are quite specific in terms of what is being described.

For items, use 오래되다 (o-rae-doe-da) to express a positive meaning, e.g.

이 그림은 오래된 것이다.
(i geu-rim-eun o-rae-don geos-i-da.)
This picture is old and venerable.

The word 낳다 (nal-da) is used to emphasize a negative meaning, e.g.

이 책상은 낳았다.
(i chaek-sang-eun nal-at-da.)
This desk is old and run-down.
When referring to oneself, younger people or animals, one uses the word 네다 (neul-ka-da). For example:

나도 이제 늙었다.
(na-do i-je neulg-ek-ka-da.)
Now I am old.

The word 나가가 많다 (na-i-ga man-ta) is used to describe oneself or other people regardless of age. However, the honorific marker -시 (-si) should be attached if necessary, e.g.

부모님이 나가가 많으시다.
(bu-mo-nim-i na-i-ga man-eu-si-da.)
My parents are old.

When speaking of someone in a humble or deferential manner, one uses the word 연세가 많으시다 (yeon-se-ga man-eu-si-da), e.g.

부모님이 연세가 많으시다.
(bu-mo-nim-i yeon-se-ga man-eu-si-da.)
My parents are old.

(1) Kinds of Stores

꽃집 'kot-jip, 화인 hwa-won
다방 da-bang, 카페 ka-pe
백화점 bae-kwa-jecom
방점 ppang-jiip, 제과점 je-gwa-jecom
사진관 sa-jin-gwan
서점 seo-jecom, 핫발 chack-bang
슈퍼마켓 syu-peo-ma-ket
신발가게 sii-bal-kka-ge
악국 yak-guk, 악방 yak-bang
옷가게 ot-ga-ge
우체국 u-che-guk
은행 eun-haeng
장난감 가게 jang-nan-kka-ga-ga
편의점 pyeon-ui-jecom, 가게 ga-ga
florist/flower shop
café, coffee shop
department store
bakery
photo shop
bookstore
supermarket
shoe store
drugstore
clothing store
post office
bank
toy store
convenience store

(2) Clothing

남방 nam-bang
넥타이 nek-ta-i
모자 mo-ja
모모리 mok-do-ri
바지 ba-ji
블라우스 beul-la-u-seu
셔츠 syeo-cheu
속옷 sog-ot
스웨터 seu-we-teo
스카프 seu-ka-peu
스카프 pem-seu-ka-ndo
양말 yang-mal
T-shirts, tennis/golf shirts
necktie
hat
muffler/scarf
pants
blouse
shirt
underwear
sweater
scarf
panty hose
socks
Putting On and Taking Off Clothes

Korean has different verbs for “to put on” or “to wear,” and “to take off,” depending on how the item is worn. For example, 입다 (ip-da) is for apparel, other than headgear, footwear, or gloves. The verb 신다 (sin-tta) is for footwear, and the verb 까다 (kki-da) is for things that fit tightly, such as gloves.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Items</th>
<th>Putting On Verb</th>
<th>Taking Off Verb</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>옷 ot clothes</td>
<td>입다 ip-da</td>
<td>벗다 beot-da</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>양말 yang-mal socks</td>
<td>신다 sin-tta</td>
<td>벗다 beot-da</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>신발 sin-bal, shoes</td>
<td>신다 sin-tta</td>
<td>벗다 beot-da</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>모자 mo-ja hat, cap</td>
<td>쓰다 sseu-da</td>
<td>벗다 beot-da</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>안경 an-gyeong glasses</td>
<td>까다 kki-da</td>
<td>벗다 beot-da, 벗다 ppae-da</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The verb 하다 (ha-da) is used with necklaces, earrings, and other accessories.

Darkness and Patterns

light e.g. light yellow
연한 yeon(-han)
연한 노란색 yeon-han no-ran-saek
연노란색 yeon-no-rang-saek
연노랑색 yeon-no-rang-saek
진한 jin(-han)
진한 노란색 jin-han no-ran-saek
진노란색 jin-no-rang-saek
진노랑색 jin-no-rang-saek

dark e.g. dark yellow
채크무늬 che-keu-mu-nui, che-keu-mu-ni
축무늬 jul-mu-nui, jul-mu-ni
꽃무늬 kkon-mu-nui, kkon-mu-ni
문화적 참고사항 Cultural Note

In Korea, negotiating prices is common except in department stores and supermarkets, where all items have price tags. Although growing numbers of merchants accept credit cards, they still prefer cash to plastic. Tax is included in the price. Most shops are open until 10 pm and some are open until midnight or 24 hours. It is advisable to carry sufficient cash as ATM machines are not easily found apart from banks. One needs to know one’s clothing size as many clothing stores are reluctant to allow the trying-on of clothes prior to purchase. A full refund for cash is rare, but exchanges for other products are possible.

연습문제 Exercises

1. Please respond to the following:

(1) 어서 오세요, 손님, 뭐 찾으세요?
   eo-seo o-se-yo, son-nim. mwo chaj-eu-se-yo?
(2) 어떤 바지하고 셔츠를 찾으시는지요?
   eo-tteon ba-ji-ha-go cyeo-cheu-reu chaj-eu-si-neun-de-yo?
(3) 사이즈는 몇 입으세요?
   ssa-i-jeu-neun myeo-ot ib-eu-se-yo?
(4) 손님이 입으실 건가요, 다른 분한테 선물하실 건가요?
   son-nim-i ib-eu-sil kkeon-ga-yo, da-reun bun-han-te
   seon-mul-ha-sil kkeon-ga-yo?
(5) 제가 보기엔 잘 어울리는 것 같은데 손님은 어떠세요?
   je-ga bo-gi-e-neun jal eo-ul-li-neun geot gat-eun-de
   son-nim-eun eo-tteo-se-yo?

2. Please translate the following into English:

(1) 이게 요즘 재일 많이 팔리는 디자인인대요.
   i-ge yo-jeum je-il man-i pal-li-neun di-ja-in-de-yo.
(2) 그런데 이거 드라이 해야 되는 거 아닌가요?
   geu-reon-de i geo deu-ra-i hae-ya doe-neun geo a-nin-ga-yo?
(3) 요즘엔 정량판도도 드라이 안 해도 되는 게 많이 나와요.
   yo-jeum-en jeong-jang-ba-ji-do deu-ra-i an hae-do doe-neun ge
   man-i na-wa-yo.
(4) 경가는 10만원인데 요즘 세일기간이라서 25프로 세일해 드
   리고 있어요.
   jeong-kka-neun sim-man-won-in-de yo-jeum sse-il-g-gan-i-ra-
   seo i-sib-o-pee-ro sse-il-hae deu-ri-go iss-eo-yo.
(5) 요즘엔 나이드신 분들이 점점은 색깔을 더 싫어하였어요.
   yo-jeum-en na-i-deu-sin bun-deul-i jeom-jan-eun saek-kkal-eul
   deo sil-eo-ha-se-yo.
3. Please fill in the blanks with appropriate passive verbs:

(1) 아이가 엄마한테 (만다:_________). a-i-ga em-ma-han-te (man-nda)
(2) 자기 신호등이 (보다:_________). jeo-ge sin-ho-deung-i (bo-da)
(3) 치마가 많이 길이 (막다:_________). cha-ga man-a-seo gil-i (mak-da)
(4) 우체부가 개한데 (물다:_________). u-che-bu-ga gae-han-te (mul-da)
(5) 개한테 사과를 ( Bettada:_________ ). gae-han-te sa-gwa-reul (beot-da)

4. Please fill in the blanks with appropriate words:

현준씨는 아침에 양복을 (1. ), 넥타이 를 (2. ), 구두를 (3. ), 안경을 (4. ) 휴가에 갑니다. 지벽에 잠에 돌아요면 양복을 (6. ), 넥타이를 (7. ), 구두를 (8. ), 안경을 (9. ), 모자를 (10. ) 천니다.

5. Please write a paragraph describing your favorite fashion.
표현 Patterns

좋은 아침입니다.
jo-eun a-chim-im-ni-da.
Good morning.

일찍 나오세요.
il-ji jik na-o-syeon-ne-yo.
You came out early.

오늘은 이것 저것 일이 좀 많아서요.
o-neul-eun i-get jeo-geot il-i jom man-a-seo-yo.
That’s because I have quite a lot of work to do today.

왜 별씨 나오셨어요?
wa-e beol-sseo na-o-sycos-eeo-yo?
Why did you come so early?

오늘은 값이 별로 부담하지 않아서 좀 일찍 도착했습니다.
o-neul-eun gi-i byeol-lo bok-ja-pa-ji an-a-seo jom il-ji jik
do-cha-kaet-seum-ni-da.
There wasn’t too much traffic today, so I arrived a little early.

일 시작하기 전에 같이 커피나 한잔 할까요?
il si-ja-ka-gi jeon-e ga-chi keo-pi-na han-jan hal-kka-yo?
Shall we have some coffee together before we start work?

마침 저쪽에 음료수 자판기가 있는데요.
ma-chim jeo-jjog-e cun-nyo-su ja-pan-gi-ga in-ne-yo.
Coincidentally, a drink vending machine is over there.

나는 냉커피나 한잔 할까요 하는데 성민씨는 월로 하시겠어요?
na-neun naeng-keo-pi-na han-jan hal-kka ha-neun-de
seong-min-ssi-neun mwol-lo ha-si-gess-eeo-yo?
I would like to have a can of iced coffee, and what would you like
to have, Seong-Min?

저도 냉커피로 하지고요.
jeo-do naeng-keo-pi-ro ha-jji-yo.
I would like to have an iced coffee also.

별씨 점심시간이 다 됐군요.
It is already about time for lunch.

오늘은 정말 시간이 빨리 가네요.
o-neul-eun jeom-gal si-gan-i ppal-li ga-ne-yo.
The time (seems to) be going by so fast today.

회사 앞에 한식집이 새로 생겼는데 가 보셨습니까?
hoe-sa ap-e han-sik-jib-i sae-ro saeng-gyeon-neun-de gab
o-syeot-seum-ni-kka?
A Korean restaurant has just opened in front of the office, and have
you been there?

아니오, 아직 안 가 봤어요.
a-ni-o, ajik ga bwass-eeo-yo.
No, I have not been there yet.

그 집은 월 가장 합니까?
geu jib-eun mwol ja-l ham-ni-kka?
What kind of dishes are good there (lit. in the house)?
또 오셨네요.
tto o-syeon-ne-yo.
You are here again. (lit. You came again.)

어서 이리 들어오세요.
eo-seo i-ri deul-eo-o-se-yo.
Please come this way.

여기 선풍이 앞이 제일 시원해요.
yeo-gi seon-pung-gi a-p i je-il si-won-hae-yo.
This, in front of the fan, is the coolest spot.

오늘은 제가 우리 과장님도 모시고 왔으니까 특별히 더 잘 해 주셔야 됩니다.
o-neul-eun je-ga u-ri gwa-jang-nim-do mo-sigo wass-eu-ni-kka
Since I brought my manager with me today, please be especially nice.

그럼 건 걱정 마세요.
geu-reon geon geok-jeong-ha-ji ma-se-yo.
Don't worry about that.

오늘은 칼로 해 드릴까요?
o-neul-eun mwol-lo hae deu-ril-kka-yo?
What would you like today? (lit. What do you want me to cook
   for you?)

물을냉면으로 하시겠습니까, 비빔냉면으로 하시겠습니까?
mul-lang-myeon-eu-ro ha-si-get-seum-ni-kka,
   bi-bim-naeng-myeon-eu-ro ha-si-get-seum-ni-kka?
Would you like to have naeng-myeon soup or hot-paste
   naeng-myeon?
나는 뜨끔해 좋겠네요.
na-neun mul-lang-myeon-i jo-ken-ne-yo.
Naeng-myeon soup sounds good to me. (lit. Naeng-myeon soup would be good for me.)

여기 뜨끔한 나머지 떡볶이 좀 갖다 주세요.
yeo-gi mul-lang-myeon ha-na-li~go bi-bim-naeng-myeon ha-na
ppal-li jom gat-da ju-se-yo.
Please bring a naeng-myeon soup and a hot-paste naeng-myeon here quickly.

비빔냉면은 너무 맵지 않게 해 주세요.
bi-bim-naeng-myeon-eun neo-mu maep-ji an-ke hae ju-se-yo.
Please do not make the hot-paste naeng-myeon too spicy.

냉수하고 물수건도 좀 갖다 주세요.
naeng-su-ha-go mul-ssu-geon-do jom gat-da ju-se-yo.
Please give us some cold water and wet towels too.

금방 갖다 드릴게요.
I will bring it right away.

여기 냉면 나왔습니다.
yeo-gi naeng-myeon na-wat-seum-ni-da.
Here comes your naeng-myeon.

이 파전은 서비스로 드리는 거니까 맞이있게 드세요.
i pa-jeon-eun sseo-bi-sseu-ro deu-ri-neum geo ni-kka mas-it-ge
deu-se-yo.
This scallion pancake is on the house, so please enjoy it.

결 맛하겠습니다.
jal meok-get-seum-ni-da.
We will enjoy it.

음식이 입에 맞으십니까?
eum-sig-i ib-e maj-eu-sim-ni-kka?
Did you like the food? (lit. The food fits your taste?)

정말 국물도 시원하고 참 맛있네요.
jeong-mal gung-mul-do si-won-ha-go cham mas-in-ne-yo.
The soup is very cool and nice, and quite delicious.

앞으로 자주 와어겠어요.
ap-eu-ro ja-ju wa-ya-gess-eb-yo.
I should come more often from now on.

그래서 지도 요즘 이 집 단골이 됐지 않습니까?
geu-rae-seo jeo-do yo-jeum i jip dan-gol-i dwaet-ji an-seum-ni-kka?
That's why I am a regular customer at this place, you know?

먹분에 잘 먹었습니다.
dek-bun-e jal meog-eot-seum-ni-da.
Thanks to you, I had a great meal.

다음 번에 내가 사지요.
I will treat you next time.

그럼 이제 일어날까요?
geu-reom i-je il-co-nal-kka-yo?
Should we leave now?

여기 모두 얼마입니까?
yeo-gi mo-da eol-ma-im-ni-kka?
How much was that altogether here?

여기 있습니다.
yeo-gi it-seum-ni-da.
Here it is.
대화 Model Conversations

(1)

강현준: 안녕하세요, 박성민씨. 좋은 아침입니다.
an-nyeong-ha-se-yo, bak-seong-min-si. jo-eun
a-chim-im-ni-da.

박성민: 안녕하세요, 강현준님. 일찍 오셨네요.
an-nyeong-ha-sim-ni-kka, gim-gwa-jang-nim. il-ji
na-o-syeon-ne-yo.

강현준: 네, 오늘은 이것 저것 일일이 즐겨서요. 그런데 식민
씨는 왜 밤이 나오셨어요?
ne, o-neul-eun i-geot jeo-geot il-i jom man-a-seo-
yo. geu-reon-de seong-min-si-nèun wae beol-sseo
na-o-syeoss-eo-yo?

박성민: 오늘은 길이 별로 복잡하지 않아서 종일찍 도착했습니다.
o-neul-eun gil-i byeol-lo bok-ja-pa-jì an-a-seo jom il-ji
ko-cha-kaet-seum-ni-da.

강현준: 그럼 군요. 그럼 우리 일 시작하기 전에 갈없이 커피나
한잔 할까요?
geu-reo-kun-yo. geu-reom u-zi il si-ja-ka-gi jeon-e ga-chi
keo-pi-na han-jan hal-kka-yo?

박성민: 네, 좋아요. 마침 저녁에 음료수 자판기가 있네요.
ne, jot-seum-ni-dz. ma-chim jeo-jjog-e eum-nyo-su ja-
paang-gi-ga in-ne-yo.

강현준: 나는 네가 커피나 한잔 할까 하는데 식민씨는 어떻게 하시
겠어요?
na-neun naeng-keo-pi-na han-jan hal-kka ha-neun-de
seong-min-si-neun mwol-lo ha-si-gess-eo-yo?

박성민: 저도 네가 커피로 하지요.
jeo-do naeng-keo-pi-ro ha-ji-yo.
Lesson 8: Food & Restaurants

박성민: 오늘은 제가 우리 과장님이 도시하고 왔으니까 특별히 더 잘 해 주셔야 합니다.

주인: 그럼요, 그런 건 걱정 마세요. 그런데 오늘은 볼로 해드릴까요?
geu-reom-yo, geu-reon geon geok-jeong ma-se-yo.
geu-reon-de o-neul-eun mwol-lo hae deu-ril-kka-yo?

박성민: 과장님, 물병으로 하시겠습니까, 비빔병으로 하시겠습니까?

김현준: 글쎄요... 나는 물병이 좋겠네요.
geul-sse-yo... na-neun mul-laeng-myeon-i jo-ken-ne-yo.

박성민: 아주머니, 그럼 여기 물병먼 하나하고 비빔병먼 하나。

비빔병은 너무 맵지 않게 해주시고요, 생수하고 물수건도 좀 갖다 주세요.

주인: 네, 알겠습니다. 급방 갖다 드리겠습니다.

주인: 여기 냄비나 왔습니다. 그리고 이 과편은 서비스로 드리는 거니까 맛있게 드세요.
변역 영문번역

(1) Kim: Hello, Mr. Seong-Min Park. Good morning.
Park: Hello, manager Mr. Kim. You came out early.
Kim: Yes, I have quite a lot of work to do today. By the way, why did you come to work so early?
Park: There wasn’t too much traffic today, so I arrived a little early.
Kim: I see. Then would you like to have a coffee with me before we start work?
Park: Yes, that sounds good. Luckily a drink vending machine is over there.
Kim: I would like to have a can of iced coffee, and what would you like to have?
Park: I would like to have iced coffee also.

(2) Kim: Wow, it is already time for lunch. The time seems to be going by so fast today.
Park: Manager, a Korean restaurant has just opened in front of the office, and have you been there?
Kim: No, I have not been there yet. What kinds of dishes are good there?
Park: Naeng-myeon is good, bi-bim-bap is good, and all the foods are relatively good there. The restaurant is clean also.
Kim: Really? Then, since the weather is hot, shall we go to try some naeng-myeon today?
Park: Then let’s go together. This is my treat today.

(3) Owner: Welcome.
Park: Hello, ma’am. How are you? Your business is doing well, right?
Owner: Oh, you are here again. Please come this way. This, in
front of the fan, is the coolest spot.
Park: Since I brought my manager with me today, please be
especially nice.
Owner: Of course, don’t worry about that. By the way, what
would you like today?
Park: Sir, would you like naeng-myeon soup or hot-paste
naeng-myeon?
Kim: Well... naeng-myeon soup sounds good to me.
Park: Ma’am, please bring us a naeng-myeon soup and a hot-
paste naeng-myeon quickly. Please do not make the
hot-paste naeng-myeon too spicy, and give us some cold
water and wet towels too.
Owner: Sure. I will bring it right away.

(A bit later)
Owner: Here is your naeng-myeon. And this scallion pancake is
on the house, so please enjoy it.
Park: Thank you, maam. We will enjoy it.
(After the meal)
Park: Manager, did you like the food?
Kim: The soup was really cool and nice, and very delicious. I
should come more often.
Park: That’s why I am a regular customer at this place, you
know?
Kim: I see. Thanks to you, I had a great meal. I will treat you
next time. Should we leave now?
Park: OK. Ma’am, how much was that altogether?
Owner: One moment... That will be twelve thousand won.
Park: Here it is. Do a lot of business.
Owner: Thank you. Good-bye. Come again.

여행 Vocabulary

Nouns / Pronouns

가게 ga-ge
광장 gwa-chang
국물 gung-mul
밀 gil
냉면 naeng-myeon
냉수 naeng-su
남겨 먹는 naeng-koe-pi
다음 반 da-eum-beon
단골 dan-gol
만이천원 man-i-cheon-won
많다 man-ta
물넘면 mul-naeng-myeon
물수건 mul-sseu-geon
비빔밥 bi-bim-bap
비빔밥 bi-bim-pap
서비스 sseo-bi-sseo
صد파기 seon-pung-ki
시간 si-gan
식사 후 sik-sa hu
주머니 a-ju-meo-ni
앞 앞:before

store, shop
department manager
soup
street, road
cold noodle
ice water
iced coffee
next time
regular customer
1200 won
to be many
cold noodle soup
wet towel
cold noodle with hot paste
rice with mixed vegetable service
fan
time
after a/the meal
middle-aged woman
front
here
today
we, us
drink
food
this and that
things, work
banding machine
after a while
Lesson 8: Food & Restaurants

Verbs

가 보다 ga bo-da to have been
갖다 드리다 gat-da deu-ri-da to bring or take something (hon.)
갖다 주다 gat-da ju-da to bring or take something
행하다 gwaen-chan-ta to be OK
偎엇하다 kkae-kkeu-ta-da to be clean
나가다 na-ga-da to go out
나오다 na-o-da to come out
다 되다 da doc-da to be all done
닫골이 되다 dan-gol-i doe-da to become a regular customer
derà deop-da to be hot
do착하다 do-chi-ka-da to arrive
d리다 deu-ri-da to give (hon.)
돌라 deul-da to eat (hon.)
들어오다 deul-eo-o-da to enter
맞이다 mass-it-da to be tasty
먹다 meok-da to eat
먹어 보다 meog-eo bo-da to try to eat
모시고 오다 mo-si-go o-da to bring someone (hon.)
모시다 mo-si-da to take care (hon.)
복지하다 bok-ja-pa-da to be busy
사다 sa-da to buy

Adverbs / Conjunctions

같이 ga-chi together
금방 geum-bang soon
너무 neo-mu too
먹으면 deok-bun-e thanks to
또 tto again
마침 ma-chim just in time
많았게 mas-it-ge to be tasty
많지 않게 maep-ji an-ke to not be hot
모두 mo-du all
벌써 beol-sseo already
벌로 byeol-lo not particularly
비교적 bi-gyo-jeok relatively
빨리 ppal-li fast
새로 sae-ro newly
아이구 a-i-gu oh
아직 a-jik yet
앞으로 ap-ou-ro from now on
어서 eo-sco quickly
앞마 eol-ma how much?
왜 wae why?
요즘 yo-jeum these days
문법 Grammar

(1) Coming and Going: 오다 vs. 가다

In Korean, a movement may be described differently depending on whether the motion is away from or towards the speaker. The direction determines whether to use a form of 오다 (come) or 가다 (go) to describe the motion.

Away from the speaker: 가다 (ga-da) to go  
나가다 (na-ga-da) to go out  
들어가다 (deul-eo-ga-da) to enter  
올라가다 (ol-la-ga-da) to go up  
내려가다 (nae-ryeo-ga-da) to go down

Towards the speaker: 오다 (o-da) to come  
나오다 (na-o-da) to come out  
들어오다 (deul-eo-o-da) to enter  
올라오다 (ol-la-o-da) to come up  
내려오다 (nae-ryeo-o-da) to come down

However, this rule does not apply when a speaker talks about his or her own action. Notice Jeong-Ho says 지금 가요 (ji-geum ga-yo), not 지금 왜요 (ji-geum wa-yo) in the following exchange:

Example:
A: 젤호씨 왜 안 오세요?
   (jeong-ho-ssi wae an o-se-yo?)
   Jeong-Ho, why do you not come?

B: 지금 가요.
   (ji-geum ga-ye.)
   I am coming.
(2) Before and After: ـ기 전에 (gi jeon-e) vs. ـ고 나서 (go na-seo) and ـ음 다음에/추에 ((eu)n da-eum-e/hu-e)

The pattern [verb + ـ기 전에 (gi jeon-e)] indicates that the second action occurs before the first one is completed. As such, the first clause never uses the past tense. When a noun is used in place of a verb, add ـ기 전에 to the noun. For example:

류가가 시작하기 전에… (hyu-ga si-ja-ga-gi jeon-e)
Before the vacation starts...

류가 시작 전에… (hyu-ga si-jak jeon-e)
Before the start of the vacation...

The pattern [verb + ـ고 나서 (go na-seo)] indicates that the first action has been completed and the second is forthcoming. It is never used with a descriptive verb stem and does not use a past tense marker. Expressions that can be used interchangeably are ـ음 다음에, and, in written Korean,

류가가 시작하고 나서… (hyu-ga-ga si-ja-ka-gi go na-seo)
After the vacation starts...

류가가 시작한 다음에… (hyu-ga-ga si-ja-kan da-eum-e)
After the start of the vacation...

(3) Negation (the negative form of predicates)

To negate a predicate using short-form negative markers, place the negative adverb 안 (do not) or 못 (cannot) immediately before the predicate. The negative of the predicate 가요 (ga-yo) is 안 가요 (an ga-yo) and 못 가요 (mot ga-yo), the negative of 먹어요 (meog-eo-yo) is 안 먹어요 (an meog-eo-yo) and 못 먹어요 (mot meog-eo-yo), and the negative of 와요 (wa-yo) is 안 와요 (an wa-yo) and 못 와요 (mot wa-yo).

The word 못 (cannot) is used instead of 안 (do not) when one's circumstances do not permit the action of the verb.

To negate an action verb following the pattern of [noun] +하다, place 안 or 못 between the noun and the verb, as in:

전화 안 해요. (jeon-hwa an hae-yo.)
I do not call.

일 안 해요. (il an hae-yo.)
I do not work.

전화 못 해요. (jeon-hwa mot hae-yo.)
I cannot call.

일 못 해요. (il mot hae-yo.)
I cannot work.

To negate a descriptive verb using the pattern of [noun] +하다, place 안 before the noun. Examples:

안 피곤해요. (an pi-gon-hae-yo.)
I am not tired.

안 착해요. (an cha-kae-yo.)
I am not kind/nice.

To use the more formal long-form negative marker often found in writing, add the endings ~지 않다 (ji an-ta) or ~지 못하다 (ji mo-ta-da) to the verb, e.g.

저는 가지 못해요. (jeo-neun ga-ji mo-tae-yo.)
I can't go.
Lesson 5: Food & Restaurants

(4) “Doing something for someone”: ~아/어 주다 (a/eo ju-da) vs. ~아/어 드리다 (a/eo deu-ri-da)

When the pattern ~아/어 주다 is used, it means that one is performing the action of the verb for the benefit of another person. The past tense is ~아/어 했다 (a/eo jwoss-eo-ya), and the future tense is ~아/어 줄 거예요 (a/eo jul kkeo-ye-ya).

읽어주다 (ig-eo-ju-da) to read for someone’s benefit
놀아주다 (nol-a-ju-da) to play for someone’s benefit
빌려주다 (bil-lyeo-ju-da) to lend for someone’s benefit
도와주다 (do-wa-ju-da) to help for someone’s benefit

When requesting something for the benefit of the speaker, use ~아/어 주세요. This means, “Please do . . . for me.” Examples:

종 도와주세요. (jom do-wa ju-seyo.)
Please help me.

다시 한번 말씀해 주세요. (da-si han-beon mal-sseum-jae ju-se-ya.)
Please say that again for me.

The pattern ~아/어 주셔서 감사합니다/고맙습니다 expresses gratitude for performing an action. The adverb 대단히, the equivalent of “very much,” can be added before the equivalent of “thank you” for added emphasis.

The ending ~아/어 주셔서 감사합니다/고맙습니다 is used to express gratitude. The adverb 대단히 may be added. Examples:

도와 주셔서 (대단히) 감사합니다.
(do-wa ju-syseo-ya (dae-dan-hi) gam-sa-ham-ni-da.)
Thank you (very much) for helping me.
(5) “Have to, must” - 아/어야 되다 (a/yo-ya doe-da)

When indicating that one has to or must do something, the ending
아/어야 되다 is used. Examples:

지금 가야 왜요. (ji-geum ga-yd dwae-yo.)
I have to go now.

조용히 해야 되요. (jo-yong-hi hae-ya dwae-yo.)
We must be quiet.

(6) “Be thinking of ~ing” -(으)ㄹ까 하다 ((eu)l-kka ha-da)

The construction of the verb stem + -(으)ㄹ까 하다 is used to
express a tentative thought about what one might do. The pattern
means “I am/we are thinking of ~ing.” Examples:

오늘은 피곤해서 일찍 잠에요. (o-neul-eum pi-gon-hae-seo il-jjik jal-kka hae-ya.)
Since I am tired today, I am thinking of going to bed early.

저녁에 피자나 음료가 해요. (joo-nyeoog-e pi-ja-na meog-eul-kka hae-ya.)
I am thinking of having a pizza at dinner.

(7) Expressing experience: -아/어 보다 (a/e obo-da)

The pattern -아/어 보다 conveys that the action of the main verb
indicates an experience, an attempt, or a suggestion that someone try
something.

서울에 가 보셨어요? (seo-ul-e ga6 o-syeoss-eyo?)
Have you been in Korea?
(8) Bringing (someone or something) / Taking (someone or something)

It is important to know two things when deciding on the correct equivalent for bring and take. The first is whether what is being brought or taken is a person. The second, if it is a person, is to determine whether age and/or standing necessitates the more deferential term. First it should be determined. One uses 가지고 오다 (ga-ji-go o-da) or 가지고 가다 (ga-ji-da ga-da) for items, e.g.

공을 가지고 왔다. (gong-eul ga-ji-go wat-da.)
I brought the ball.

With younger people or those of lower status, one uses 대리고 오다 (de-ri-go o-da) or 대리고 가다 (de-ri-go ga-da), e.g.

동생을 대리고 왔다. (dong-saeng-eul de-ri-go wat-da.)
I brought my younger sibling.

With older people or those of higher status, one uses the honorific 모시고 오다 (mo-si-go o-da) or 모시고 가다 (mo-si-go ga-da), e.g.

부모님을 모시고 왔다. (bu-mo-nim-eul mo-si-go wat-da.)
I brought my parents.

Comments Further Study

Meals

아침 a-chim
breakfast
점심 jeom-sim
lunch
저녁 joo-nyeok
dinner

아침을 먹다 a-chim-eul meok-da
to have breakfast
점심을 먹다 jeom-sim-eul meok-da
to have lunch
저녁을 먹다 joo-nyeok-eul meok-da
to have dinner

Restaurants

양식 yang-sik
Western food
양식당 yang-sik-dang
Western restaurant
일식 il-sik
Japanese food
일식당 il-sik-dang
Japanese restaurant
중식 jung-sik
Chinese food
중식당 jung-sik-dang
Chinese restaurant
한식 han-sik
Korean food
한식당 han-sik-dang
Korean restaurant

손님 son-nim
customer
주방원 jong-eob-won
waiter, waitress
계산서 gye-san-seo
check, bill
가스름도 geo-seu-reum-ton
change
음식 eum-sik
food
음료수 eum-nyo-su
beverage
메뉴 me-nyu
menu
 자리 ja-ri
seat
주문하다 ju-mun-ha-da
to order
시키다 si-ki-da
to order
Tastes

상겁다 sing-geop-da to be blended
짜다 jja-da to be salty
시다 si-da to be sour
맬다 maep-da to be spicy/hot
d달다 dal-da to be sweet
쓰다 tteu-da to be tart

배가 부르다 bae-ga bu-reu-da to be full
배가 고프다 bae-ga go-peu-da to be hungry
목이 마르다 mog-i ma-reu-da to be thirsty
있어요 있다 mas-i it-da to be delicious
있어요 없다 mas-i eop-da to not be delicious

Basics for Korean-style Dishes

밥 bap cooked rice (usually steamed rice)
국 guk soup
김치 gim-chi kimchi
반찬 ban-chan side dishes

Meat 고기 go-gi

소고기 so-go-gi beef
닭고기 dak-go-gi chicken
생선 saeng-seon fish
돼지고기 dwae-ji-go-gi pork

Drinks 미술 것 음료수 ma-sil-kkeot/eum-nyo-su

물 mul water
커피 keo-pi coffee

coli cola
7-UP 7-Up
주스 ju-seu juice
맥주 maek-ju beer
소주 so-ju soju
양주 yang-ju Western liquor
포도주 po-do-ju wine
문학적 참고사항 Cultural Note

A restaurant is sometimes called a 집 (jip), or house, especially when referring to the type of food in which it specializes. In most Korean restaurants, it is not necessary to wait to be seated. Feel free to seat oneself at any open table. Many restaurants post their menus on the wall. As such, one should wave or call the waitress over when one is ready to order. Middle-aged waitresses are referred to as 아줌마 (a-jum-ma). Along with the order, one receives several side dishes and a bowl of rice. The rice is refilled at a nominal or no charge. When multiple people are eating together at one table, there will only be one bill unless individual bills are requested. This is because friends usually take turns paying for the whole meal. Although fine restaurants produce a bill stating the amount owed, most regular restaurants do not provide one. The customer is expected to pay at the counter on the way out. There is no sales tax and tipping is not customary. If you sit at a table with chairs, shoes are not removed. However, if one is seated on the floor, usually in a separate room, shoes must be removed.

Hotel restaurants are similar to American-style ones in that they do not follow many of these rules. Regular customers may even receive a delicacy as a side dish for free.

연습문제 Exercises

1. Please respond to the following:

(1) 우리 일식당에 갔어요. 왜 이렇게 비싸요?
   u-ri il-si-da-jeon-e gak-eu-jaa bi-sa-yo?
(2) 저는 빅 마실건데. your name씨는 할로하시겠어요?
   jeo-neun keo-pi ma-sil-kkeon-de _____ ssi-neun mwol-yo
   ha-si-gess-ee-yo?
(3) 회사 앞에 음식점이 새로 생겼는데 가 보셨어요?
   hoe-sa a-p-e eum-sik-jeom-i se-ro saeng-gyeon-neun-de ga
   bo-syeoass-ee-yo?
(4) 오늘은 왜 이렇게 열찍 나오셨어요?
   o-neul-eun wa-e i-reo-ke il-ji-jla na-o-syeoass-ee-yo?
(5) 오늘은 몇 시였습니까?
   o-neul-eun mwol deu-si-get-seum-ni-kka?
(6) 음식이 엿에 맞으신니까?
   eum-sig-i ib-e maj-eu-sim-ni-kka?

2. Please translate the following into English:

(1) 오늘은 점심 시간이 빨리 가네요.
   o-neul-eun jeong-sam ji-gan-i ppaal-li ga-nè-yo.
(2) 비교적 음식이 더 맛있습니다. 가게도 깨끗하고요.
   bi-gyo-jeok eum-sig-i da gwaen-chan-seum-ni-da. ga-ge-do
   kkae-kkeu-ta-go-yo.
(3) 오늘은 제가 모시겠습니다.
   o-neul-eun je-ga mo-si-get-seum-ni-da.
(4) 오늘은 제가 손님도 모시고 왔으니까 특별히 더 잘 해 주셔
   야 합니다.
   o-neul-eun je-ga son-nim-do mo-si-go was-eu-ni-kka teuk-
   byolg-hi deo jal hae ju-syeo-ya ham-ni-da.
(5) 여기 벌수하고 물수건도 좀 잡니다 주세요.
   yeo-gi naeng-su-ha-go mul-ssu-geon jom gat-da ju-se-yo.
(6) 그래서 저도 요즘 이 집 단골이 됐지 않습니까?
   geu-rae-seo jeo-do yo-jeum i jip dan-gol-i dwaet-ji
   an-seum-ni-kka?

3. Please translate the following into Korean:

   (1) How much was that altogether?
   (2) Do a lot of business.
   (3) Thanks to you, I enjoyed the food.
   (4) I will treat you next time.
   (5) Your business is doing well, right?
   (6) You came out early.

4. Please change the following sentences to the negative:

   (1) 책상 위에 컴퓨터가 있어요. chaek-sang wi-e keop-pu-teo-ga
       iss-eo-yo.
   (2) 우리 아버지는 선생님이세요. u-ri a-beo-ji-neun
       seon-saeng-nim-i-se-yo.
   (3) 저는 한국어를 잘 알아요. jeo-neun han-gug-eo-reul jal
       al-a-yo.
   (4) 저는 한국 음식을 좋아해요. jeo-neun han-gug-eum-sig-eul
       jo-a-hae-yo.
   (5) 제 여자친구는 아주 예뻐요. je yeo-ja-chin-gu-neun a-ju
       ye-ppeo-yo.

5. Please write a paragraph describing your favorite food and how to make it.
Patterns

어느 분 찾아 오셨어요?
eo-neu bui chaj-a o-syeoss-eo-yo?
Are you looking for anybody? (lit. How are you looking for?)

아무 분이나 괜찮아요.
a-mu bun-i-na gwaen-chan-a-yo.
Any one is fine.

파마 하실 건가요?
pa-ma ha-sil kken-ga-yo?
Are you going to get a perm for your hair?

저는 파마 할 거고요, 오빠는 커프만 할 겸대요.
jeo-neun pa-ma hal kkeo-go-yo, o-ppa-neun kkeo-teu-man hal kkeon-de-yo.
I am going to get a perm, and my brother is just getting a haircut.

 얼마나 기다려야 돼요?
eol-ma-na gi-da-ryeo-ya dwae-yo?
How long do we have to wait?

한 15분만 기다리시면 될 것 같은데요.
About 15 minutes. (lit. It seems to be done if you wait only about 15 minutes.)

저쪽에 앉아서 잠깐만 기다리세요.
Please sit over there and wait a little.
머리를 염색하면 어떻게 손질해야 돼요?
meo-ri-reul yeom-sae-ka-myeon eo-tteo-ke son-jil-hae-ya dwae-yo?
After tinting my hair, how should I take care of it?

머리 감고 나서 수면으로 잘 말린 다음에 해야 크림안 조금 발라 주시면 돼요.
meo-ri gwm-kko na-seo su-geon-eu-jo jal mal-lin da-eum-e he-eo-
keu-rim-man jo-geum bal-la ju-si-myeon dwae-yo.
After washing your hair, dry it well with a towel, and put a little
hair cream on it.

머리 걸이 많이 생허니까 드라이는 안 하는게 낫고요.
meo-ri kkyeol-i man-i sang-ha-ni-kka deu-ra-i-neun an ha-si-neun
ge nat-go-yo.
Because your hair will be damaged, it is better not to blow-dry
the hair.

그럼 알려서 해 주세요.
gu-reom al-a-seo hae ju-se-yo.
Then please do what you think would look good (on me).

저한테 잘 어울리게 해 주세요.
jeo-han-te jal eo-il-li-ge ye-ppeu-ge hae ju-se-yo.
Please do it so it would look good on me. (lit. Please do it pretty
and match well with me.)

어떻게 잘라 드릴까요?
eo-tteo-ke jal-deu-ril-kka-yo?
How would you like your hair cut?

머리 모양은 바꾸지 마시고 그냥 좀 짧게 다듬어 주세요.
meo-ri mo-yang-eun ba-kku-ji ma-si-go gu-nyang jom jjalp-ge
da-deum-eo ju-se-yo.
Don’t change the shape of the hair and just trim it so it’s a little
shorter.
🕒 머리하고 옆머리는 좀 짧게 까고 앞머리는 너무 짧지 않게 해 주세요.

_dwin-meo-ri-ha-go yeom-meo-ri-neun jjalp-ge kkak-go
am-meo-ri-neun neo-mu jjalp-jí an-ke hae ju-sc-yo_.

Please cut the hair on the back and on the sides a little shorter, but
do not cut the front hair too short.

머리가 많이 가네요.
_meo-ri-ga man-i gi-ne-yo_.
Your hair is pretty long.

언제 머리를 자르셨어요?
_eon-je meo-ri ja-reu-syeo-s-eo-yo_?
When was the last time you had your hair cut? (lit. When did you
have a haircut?)

두 달 밖에 안 됐는데 그래요.
_du-dal bakk-e an dwaen-neun de geu-rae-yo_.
It has been only two months.

머리가 낯들보다 짧게 자른 아닙니까요.
_meo-ri-ga nam-deul-bo-da ppal-li ja-ra-na-bwa-yo_.
I guess my hair grows faster than others people’s.

어머세요? 마음에 드세요?
_co-tteo-se-yo? ma-eum-e deu-se-yo?_
How is it? Do you like it?

관현은 것 같은데요.
_gwaen-chan-eun geot gat-eun-de-yo_.
It looks fine.

그럼 이쪽으로 오세요. 머리 갸아 드릴게요.
_geu-reom i-jiog-eu-wo o-se-yo. meo-ri gam-a deu-ri-likke-yo_.
Then come over here, please. I will wash your hair.
대화 Model Conversations

(1)
증업원: 어서 오세요, 손님. 어느 분 찾아 오셨어요?
eo-seo o-se-yo, son-nim eo-neu bua chaj-a
o-syeoss-eo-yo?
이해근: 아무 분이니 친절이야.
a-mu bun-i-na gwaen-chan-a-yo.
증업원: 파마 하실 건가요?
pa-ma ha-sil kkeon-ga-yo?
이해근: 네, 저는 파마 할 거고요, 오랜 커타만 할 견데요. 엉
미나 기다려야 돼요?
ne, jeo-neun pa-ma hal kkeon-go-yo, o-ppa-neun keo-teu-
man hal kkeon-de-yo. eol-ma-na gi-da-ryeo-ya dwae-yo?
증업원: 한 15분만 기다리시면 될 것 같네요. 저쪽에 앉아서
장관만 기다리세요.
han sib-o-bun-man gi-da-ri-si-myeon doel kket gat-eun-
기다리는 동안 뭐 마실 것 좀 갈다 드릴까요?
gi-da-ri-si-neun dong-an mwo ma-sil kkeot jom gat-da
deu-ril-kka-yo?
이해근: 네, 그림 저는 커피 한잔 주시겠어요?
ne, geu-reom jeo-neun keo-pi han-jan ju-si-gess-eo-yo?
이정호: 저는 꾸찮아요. 그냥 찬물이나 한잔 주세요.
jeo-neun gwaen-chan-a-yo. geu-nyang chan-mul-i-na
han-jan ju-se-yo.
증업원: (잠시 후) 여기 커피하고 물 있습니다. 기다리는 동
안이 잠시 후 보시겠어요?
(jam-si- bu) yeo-gi keo-pi-ha-go mut it-seum-ni-da,
gi-da-ri-si-neun dong-an i jap-ji jom bo-si-gess-eo-yo?
이해근: 네, 고맙습니다.
ne, go-map-seum-ni-da.
BEGINNER'S KOREAN

머리 깎이 많이 상하니까 드라이기는 안 하시는 게 낫고요.
meo-ri kkyeol-i man-i sang-ha-ni-kka deu-ra-i-neun an ha-si-neun ge nat-go-yo.

이해근: 그럼 알아서 자한테 잘 아울리게 애써게 해 주세요.

(3)
미용사: 그럼 이쪽으로 오세요, 머리 감아 드릴까요?
o-ppa-do i-jjog-eu-ro anj-eu-se-yo. eo-tteo-ke jal-la deu-ri-l-kka-ko?

이정호: 머리 모양은 바꾸지 마시고 그냥 좀 깨게 다듬어 주세요.
meo-ri mo-yang-eun ba-kkku-jji ma-si-go geu-nyang jom jjalp-ge da-deum-eo ju-se-yo.

미용사: 알겠습니다. 아휴... 머리가 많이 기네요. 언제 머리 자를까요?

이정호: 두 말밖에 안 됐는데 그래요. 머리가 남들보다 훨씬 자라나네요.

미용사: (참시 후) 어떠세요? 다음에 드세요?
(jam-si hu) eo-tteo-se-yo? ma-eum-e deu-se-yo?

이정호: 네, 괜찮은 것 같았어요.
ne, gwaen-chan-eun geo gat-eun-de-yo.

Lesson 9: Barbershops & Beauty Salons.
Lesson 9: Barbershops & Beauty Salons

**English Translation**

(1)
**Employee:** Please come in, ma'am (*lit.* customer). Are you looking for anybody?

**Hye-Geun:** Anyone is fine.

**Employee:** Are you going to have your hair permed?

**Hye-Geun:** Yes, I am going to get a perm, and my brother is just getting a haircut. How long do we have to wait?

**Employee:** About 15 minutes will do. Please sit over there and wait a little. Would you like something to drink while you are waiting?

**Hye-Geun:** Yes, then would you give me a cup of coffee?

**Jeong-Ho:** I am fine. Just give me a cup of water, please.

**Employee:** Here is your coffee and your water. Would you like to look at some magazines while you are waiting?

**Hye-Geun:** Yes, thank you.

(2)
**Hairdresser:** Come sit here please, ma’am. How would you like your hair done?

**Hye-Geun:** I would like to get my hair straightened. Don’t cut the hair, please.

**Hairdresser:** The way I look at it, layering the side hair by matching it with the length of your bangs will be much better. Your hair is pretty thick, so without the layering, it will look stuffy.

**Hye-Geun:** Then do it that way.

**Hairdresser:** Also your hair is quite dark, so let’s try tinting your hair. Then your face will look softer.

**Hye-Geun:** Really? But after the tinting, how do I take care of it?

**Hairdresser:** The same. After washing your hair, dry it well with a towel, and rub a little hair cream on it. Because your hair will be damaged, it is better not to blow-dry the hair.

**Hye-Geun:** Then do what you think would look good on me.

(3)
**Hairdresser:** Sir (*lit.* Brother), come sit here, please. How would you like your hair cut?

**Jeong-Ho:** Don’t change the shape of the hair and just trim it a little. Please cut the hair on the back and on the sides a little shorter, but do not cut the front hair too much.

**Hairdresser:** I understand. Whew... Your hair is pretty long. When was the last time you had your hair cut?

**Jeong-Ho:** It has been only two months. I guess my hair grows faster than other people’s.

**Hairdresser:** (after a while)

**Hairdresser:** How is it? Do you like it?

**Jeong-Ho:** Yes, it looks fine.

**Hairdresser:** Then come over here, please. I will wash your hair.

**Hairdresser:** (after a while)

**Hairdresser:** It’s all done. You both had a lot of work done. Good-bye.
어휘 Vocabulary

Nouns / Pronouns

길이 gil-i
날들 nam-deul
두 달 du-dal
두 분 du-bun
찟머리 ðwin-me-ro
드리이 deu-ra-i
레이어 le-i-ëo
마실 것 ma-sil kkeot
머리 meo-ri
머리 걸 meo-ri kkyeol
머리 숯 meo-ri sut
머리색깔 meo-ri-saek-kkal
모양 mo-yang
물 mul
뭐 mwo
손님 son-nim
수건 su-gëon
스트레이트 파마 seu-teu-re-i-teu pa-ma

length
other people
two months
two people (hon.)
back hair
blow dry
layer
something to drink
head, hair
hair quality
hair volume, hair density
hair color
shape
water
what, something
customer
towel
hair straightening
(lit. straight perm)

Verbs

갖다 드리다 gat-da deu-ri-da
go 말다 go-map-da
괜찮다 gwaen-chan-ta
gyada리다 gi-da-ri-da
갈다 gil-da
g따다 kka-ma-ta
꼈다 kkak-da
da 되다 da doe-da
d들여 주다 da-deum-ëo ju-da
d달달해 보이다 dap-dap-hae bo-i-da
d록 같다 ttok gat-da
레이어를 줄다 le-i-co-reul ju-da
d음에 틀다 ma-eum-e deul-da
d마다 man-ta
말리다 mal-li-da
말추다 mat-chu-da
머리 갈다 meo-ri gam-tta
비꾸다 ba-kkku-da
발라 주다 bail-la ju-da
부드럽다 bu-deu-reop-da
부드러워 보이다 bu-deu-reo-wo bo-i-da
상하다 sang-ha-da
손질하다 son-jil-ha-da
수고하다 su-go-ha-da
있다 an-tta
있다 al-da

한 15분 han sib-o-bun
한번 han-beon
한잔 han jan
헤어 크림 he-eo keu-rim

about 15 minutes
once
one cup
hair cream
to bring something (hon.)
to thank
to be OK, to be good
to wait
to be long
to be black
to have a haircut
to be all done
to trim
to look heavy
to be same
to layer
to like
to be many
to dry
to fit, to set, to adjust
to wash hair
to change, to switch
to put on
to be soft
to look soft
to be damaged
to take care
to work hard
to sit
to know
to do (what someone thinks is) right
to not exist
to dye
to grow
to have cut, to cut
to cut something for someone (hon.)
to be short
to come to see
to have a haircut
to have a perm

Adverbs / Conjunctions

그냥 geu-nyang
그런데 geu-reon-de
그렇게 geu-reo-ke
그리고 geu-ri-go
너무 neo-mu
다음에 da-eum-e
별리 ppal-li
알아서 al-a-seo
어따새요? eo-tteo-se-yo
어떻게 eo-tteo-ke
어서 eo-seo
어떻게 eo-ul-li-ge
어휴.... eo-hyu
언제 eon-je
얼마나 eol-ma-na
예쁘게 ye-ppeu-ge
잘 jal
잠깐만 jam-kkan-man

just
by the way
like that
and
too
next time
fast
as (someone thinks is)
right/good
How is it?
how/somehow
quickly, please
match well
wow....
when/some time
how long/nuča/many
pretty, beautifully
well
for a minute
### (1) Causative Verbs

A causative verb is used when one thing or person *causes* another person or thing to do something. They are derived from more general verbs, using one of seven suffixes. These are: -이 (i), -히 (hi), -리 (li), -기 (gi), -우 (u), -구 (gu), and 씀 (chu). One must memorize the verbs that can become causatives and the corresponding suffixes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Verb</strong></th>
<th><strong>Causative Derivation</strong></th>
<th><strong>Sample Sentence</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>먹다</td>
<td>먹이다</td>
<td>엄마가 아기한테 우유를 먹어요.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>meok-da</td>
<td>meog-i-da</td>
<td>eom-ma-ga a-gi-han-te u-yu-teul meog-yeo-yo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to eat</td>
<td>to feed someone</td>
<td>Mom is feeding the baby.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>죽다</td>
<td>죽이다</td>
<td>제기 파리물 죽였어요.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>juk-da</td>
<td>jug-i-da</td>
<td>je-ga pa-ri-reul jug-yeoss-eo-yo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to die</td>
<td>to kill</td>
<td>I killed the fly.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>끓다</td>
<td>끓이다</td>
<td>라면을 먹으려고 물을 끓여요.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kkeul-ta</td>
<td>kkeul-i-da</td>
<td>ra-myeon-eul meog-eu-ryeo-go mul-eul kkeul-yeo-yo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to boil</td>
<td>to boil something</td>
<td>I’m boiling water to cook ramen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>입다</td>
<td>입히다</td>
<td>엄마가 아기한테 음을 입혀요.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ip-da</td>
<td>i-pi-da</td>
<td>eom-ma-ga a-gi-han-te os-eul i-pyeo-yo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to wear</td>
<td>to dress someone</td>
<td>Mom is dressing the baby.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nup-da</td>
<td>nu-pi-da</td>
<td>eom-ma-ga a-gi-reul chimdae-e nu-pyeo-yo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to lie down</td>
<td>to lay someone down</td>
<td>Mom is laying the baby down on the bed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>앓다</td>
<td>앓히다</td>
<td>엄마가 아기를 웃지에 앓혀요.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>an-tta</td>
<td>an-chi-da</td>
<td>eom-ma-ga a-gi-reul ui-ja-e an-chyeo-yo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to sit</td>
<td>to seat someone</td>
<td>Mom is sitting the baby on the chair.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>울다</td>
<td>울리다</td>
<td>형이 동생을 울려요.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ul-da</td>
<td>ul-li-da</td>
<td>hyeong-i dong-saeng-eul ul-lyeo-yo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to cry</td>
<td>to make someone cry</td>
<td>The older brother makes his younger sibling cry.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>열다</td>
<td>열리다</td>
<td>물을 열어서 열음을 만들어요.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eol-da</td>
<td>eol-li-da</td>
<td>mul-eul eol-lyeo-seo eol-eum-eul man-deul-eo-yo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to freeze</td>
<td>to freeze something</td>
<td>You can freeze water to make ice.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>벗다</td>
<td>벗기다</td>
<td>엄마가 아기 옷을 벗겨요.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beot-da</td>
<td>beot-gi-da</td>
<td>eom-ma-ga a-gi os-eul beot-geo-yo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to take off</td>
<td>to undress someone</td>
<td>Mom is undressing the baby.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Lesson 9: Barbershops & Beauty Salons

웃다 웃기다  형이 동생을 웃겨요.
ut-da ut-gi-da hyeong-i dong-saeng-eul

to laugh to make someone laugh The older brother makes his
younger sibling laugh.

신다 신기다 엄마가 아기한데 신발을 신겨요.
sin-tta sin-gi-da eom-ma-ga a-gi-han-te sin-bal-eul sin-gyeo-yo

to wear to put shoes on someone Mom is putting shoes on the
baby.

자다 재우다 엄마가 아기들 잠대에
ja-da jae-u-da eom-ma-ga a-gi-reul chim-dae-e jae-wo-yo

to sleep to make someone sleep Mom is putting the baby to
sleep on the bed.

타다 태우다 실수로 생선을 태웠어요.
ta-da tae-u-da sil-su-ro saeng-seon-eul
tae-woss-eo-yo

to burn to burn something I burned the fish by mistake.

깨다깨우다 엄마가 아침에 아이를
kkae-da kkae-u-da eom-ma-ga a-chim-e a-i-reul

to wake to wake someone up Mom is waking up the baby in
the morning.

(2) “It seems, it looks like…”: ~(으)ㄴ/눈/~~(으)ㄹ 것 같다
((eu)n/neun/(eu)l geot gat-da)

The pattern ~(으)ㄴ/눈/~~(으)ㄹ 것 같다 conveys that something seems
or looks like something else. It is common to use this pattern as an
indirect, polite expression even when the similarity is obvious.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Active Verb</th>
<th>Descriptive Verb</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Past:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>~不断完善 것 같다</td>
<td>~았/였던 것 같다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>geot gat-da</td>
<td>geot gat-da</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

effort has been completed

전 것을 같아요 예뻤던 것 같아요
jan geot ga-ta-yo ye-ppeot-deon geot
ga-ta-yo

it seems he slept

it seems she was pretty
Present: 
~는 것 같다
neun geot gat-da

저는 것 같아요
ja-neun geot ga-ta-yo
it seems he is sleeping

Future: 
~(으)로 것 같다
(eu)l geot gat-da

가봤겠다요
jal geot ga-ta-yo
it seems he is going to sleep

Oné only uses ~갖다 after a noun, e.g.

저가 영화관 갑니다.
(jo-qi-ga yeong-gwan gat-a-yo)
It looks that one over there is a movie theater.

저분이 김선녕님 같아요.
(jo-bun-i kim-song-nim gat-a-yo)
That person looks like Mr. Kim.

(3) Sentence Conjunctions and Clause Connectives

Sentence conjunctions and clause connectives share a close relationship, as detailed below.

그리고 and 아파트가 조용해야. 그리고
geu-ri-go a-pa-teu-ga jo-yong-hae-yo geu-ri-go
kkae-kkeu-tae-yo

아파트가 조용하고 깨끗해야.
a-pa-teu-ga jo-yong-hae-yo
kkae-kkeu-tae-yo
The apartment is quiet and clean.

그래서 so 아파트가 멀어요. 그래서 버스 타고 와요.
geu-rae-seo a-pa-teu-ga meol-eo-yo geu-rae-seo
beo-seu ta-go wa-yo
아파트가 멀어서 버스(을) 타고 와요.
a-pa-teu-ga meol-eo-yo beo-seu ta-go
wa-yo
The apartment is far so I took the bus.

그런데 but 아파트가 조용해야. 그런데 안 깨끗해요.
geu-reon-de a-pa-teu-ga jo-yong-hae-yo geu-reon-de
an kkae-kkeu-tae-yo
아파트가 조용한데 안 깨끗해야요.
a-pa-teu-ga jo-yong-hae-yo an
kkae-kkeu-tae-yo
The apartment is quiet but not clean.

그렇지만 but 아파트가 조용해야. 그렇지만 안 깨끗해야요.
geu-reo-chi-man a-pa-teu-ga jo-yong-hae-yo geu-reo-
chi-man an kkae-kkeu-tae-yo
아파트가 조용하지만 안 깨끗해야요.
a-pa-teu-ga jo-yong-hae-yo geu-reo-
chi-man an kkae-kkeu-tae-yo
The apartment is quiet. However, it is not clean.
Lesson 9: Barbershops & Beauty Salons

(5) "Someone or something appears or looks...": ~아/이 보이다 (a/e obo-i-da)

The pattern of adescriptive verb followed by the ending ~아/이 보이다 is used to state an opinion about the appearance of somebody or something. It literally means a person or object appears or looks like something. The speaker does not claim that the statement is objectively true.

머리가 너무 무거워 보여요.
(meo-ri-ga neo-mu geo-wo bo-yeo-yo.)
The hair looks too heavy.

아파 보이요.
(a-pa bo-yeo-yo.)
You look sick.

(6) 아무 Noun (01) 나 (a-mu ...i-na) "any Noun"

The word 아무, followed by a noun (01)나 means "any [noun]." It indicates that no matter what the noun is, it makes no difference. When the noun refers to a person, it is usually omitted, as in 아무 나 (a-mu-na) "anyone." Some useful expressions: 아무 거나 (a-mu geo-na) "whatever it may be" or "anything," 아무 데나 (a-mu de-na) "wherever" or "anywhere," and 아무 때나 (a-mu tae-na) "whenever" or "anytime."
참고학습 Further Study

Style

짧은 머리 jjaeb-eun meo-ri
긴 머리 gin meo-ri
가늘어 머리 ga-neun meo-ri
굵은 머리 gulg-eun meo-ri
웜 스타일 gop-seol meo-ri
.Repository 한 머리 ppeot-peeot-tan meo-ri
부드러운 머리 bu-deu-reo-un meo-ri
대머리 dae-meo-ri

피마머리 pa-ma meo-ri

단발머리 dan-bal meo-ri

스트레이트 파마 seu-teu-re-i-teu pa-ma

عودة 파마 gulg-eun pa-ma

미용사 mi-yong-sa,
헤어 디자이너 he-ee di-jae-i-neo

이발사 i-bal-saa

머리를 감다 meo-ri-reul gan-tta
머리를 깎다 meo-ri-reul kkak-da

머리를 다듬다 meo-ri-reul da-deum-tta
머리를 말리다 meo-ri-reul mal-li-da

머리를 빗다 meo-ri-reul bit-da
머리를 자르다 meo-ri-reul ja-reu-da

short hair
long hair
thin hair
thick hair
curly hair
thick hair
soft hair
bald
permanent-wave hair
shoulder-length hair
hair straightening
perm with large curls

woman’s hairdresser

man’s hairdresser
to shampoo
to have a haircut (for men)
to trim hair
to have a towel-dry
to brush hair
to have a haircut (for women)
to rinse, to wash out
to have a blow-dry
to rinse out, to wash out
to put on hair mousse/gel
to shampoo
to put on hair spray
to dye/tint
to have a permanent
Lesson 9: Barbershops & Beauty Salons

연습문제 Exercises

1. Please respond to the following:

(1) 어서 오세요, 어느 분 찾아 오셨어요?
   eo-seo o-še-yo, eo-neu bun chaj-a o-syeoss-eo-yo?

(2) 기다리시는 동안 왜 마실 것 좀 갤다.드릴까요?
   gi-da-ri-si-neun dong-an mwo ma-sil kkeot jom gat-da deu-ri-lkkka-yo?

(3) 머리 어떻게 해 드릴까요?
   meo-ri eo-tteo ke hae deu-ri-lkkka-yo?

(4) 머리가 많이 기내요. 언제 머리 자르겠어요?
   meo-ri-ga man-i gi-ne-yo, eon-je meo-ri ja-reu-syeoss-eo-yo?

(5) 다 왔습니다. 어디세요? 마음에 드세요?
   da dwaet-seum-ni da eo-tteo-se-yo? ma-eum-e deu-se-yo?

2. Please translate the following into English:

(1) 기다리시는 동안 이 장지 좀 보시겠어요?
   gi-da-ri-si-neun dong-an i jap-ji jom bo-si-gess-eo-yo?

(2) 머리 숀이 많아서 레이어가 않으면 좀 닿았해 보일 것 같아요.

(3) 머리 색깔이 너무 깨리니까 염색 한번 해 보세요.
   meo-ri saek-kkal-i neo-nu kka-ma-ni-kka yeom-saek han-beon hae bo-se-yo.

(4) 머리 모양은 바꾸지 마시고 그냥 잘게 좀 다듬어 주세요.
   meo-ri mo-yang-eun ba-kku-ji ma-si-go geu-nyang jjal-ge jom da-deum-eo ju-se-yo.

(5) 머리가 남들보다 자라나봐요.
3. Please fill in the blanks with appropriate causative verbs:

(1) 실수로 생선을 (타다: ) . sil-su-ro saeng-seon-eul
tae-woss-eo-yo
(2) 라면을 먹으려고 물을 (끓다: ) . ra-myeon-eul meog-eu-ryeo-go mul-eul kkeul-yeo-yo
(3) 형이 동생을 (물다: ) . hyeong-i dong-saeng-eul
ul-lyeo-yo
(4) 엄마가 아기 옷을 (брос다: ) . eom-ma-ga a-gi os-eul
beot-geo-yo
(5) 엄마가 아기한테 옷을 (입다: ) . eom-ma-ga a-gi-han-te os-eul i-ryeo-yo
(6) 의사가 너무 놀으니까 조금 (낳다: ) .
wi-ja-ga neo-mu nop-eu-ni-kka jo-geum nat-chwo ju-se-yo
(7) 엄마가 아기를 챙대에 (자다: ) . eom-ma-ga a-gi-reul
chim-dae-e jae-wo-yo

4. Please fill in the blanks with the appropriate conjunction.

(그렇지만, 그런데, 그러니까 (그럼), 그리고, 그래서)

A: 어디 가세요?
B: 얼마로 이자전구 생일이에요. (1) _______ 선물 사러 백화점에 가요.
A: 그래 sezeyo? (2) _______ 지난 주말에는 어떻게 지내셨어요?
B: 토요일에는 집꾸고 영화를 봤어요. (3) _______ 일요일에는 교회에 갔어요.
A: 아, 그래 sezeyo. (4) _______ 요즘 어떻게 지내세요?
B: 요즘은 일이 좀 적어요. (5) _______ 종 한가해요.
A: 그래 sezeyo? (6) _______ 시간 있으실 때 자하고 같이 테니스 치실래요?
B: 좋지요. (7) _______ 요즘은 제가 몸이 별로 안 좋아서 다음 주에 같겠는데요.
Lesson 10: Transportation
**Patterns**

어디까지 가실까요?
co-di-kka-ji ga-sim-ni-kka?
Where would you like to go?

대학로까지 좀 부탁합니다.
To the college's street, please.

죄송하지만 항상 좀 해도 되겠습니까?
joe-song-ha-ji-man hap-seung jom hae-do doe-get-seum-ni-kka?
I'm sorry, but would it be OK if I take another passenger?

길이 많이 막히네요.
gil-i man-i ma-ki-ne-yo.
All the roads are congested.

서울 시내는 언제나 이래요.
seo-ul si-nae-neun eon-je-na i-rae-ย.
This is quite typical on the streets in Seoul. *(lit. In downtown Seoul, the traffic is always just like this.)*

그래도 주중이 주말보다 좀 낫지 않아요?
geu-rae-do ju-jung-i ju-mal-bo-da jom nat-ji an-a-yo?
But don't you think traffic is a lot smoother during weekdays than on the weekends?

큰일 났네요. 약속시간에 늦었는데...
keun-il nan-ne-yo. yak-sok-si-가-e neuj-eon-neun-de...
I have a problem *(lit. I am in trouble.* I am late for a meeting...

거의 다 왔는데 어디 세워 드릴까요?
geo-i da wan-neun-de co-di se-wo deu-ri-l-kka-yo?
(We are) almost there, and where can I drop you off?

---

**Lesson 10: Transportation**

저기 육교 밑에 세워 주세요.
joe-gi yuk-gyo mit-e se-wo ju-se-yo.
Please drop me off under the overpass over there.

요금은 9,600원 나왔습니다.
The fare comes out to 9600 won.

여기 10,000원이요, 잔돈은 그냥 가지세요.
yeo-gi man-won-i-yo. jan-don-eun geu-nyang ga-ji-se-yo.
Here is 10,000 won. Please keep the change.

여권하고 비행기표 좀 주시겠습니까?
yeo-kkwon-ha-go bi-haeng-gi-pyo jom ju-si-get-seum-ni-kka?
May I have your passport and plane ticket?

여기 있습니다.
yeo-gi it-seum-ni-da.
Here they are.

짐은 몇 개나 부치실 겁니까?
jim-eun myeot gae-na bu-chi-sil kkeom-ni-kka?
How many pieces of luggage will you being taking *(lit. shipping)*?

두 개요. 그리고 이것 가지고 타도 되죠?
du-gae-yo. geu-ri-go i-geon ga-ji-go ta-do doe-jyo?
Just two. And I can take this one on board with me, right?

두 개까지 괜찮습니다.
You may take up to two pieces of luggage with you. *(lit. Up to two, it's OK.)*
주석은 어느 쪽으로 드릴까요?
jwa-seog-eun eo-neu jjog-eu-ro deu-riil-kka-yo?
With the seat, which side do you prefer? (lit. Which side of seat should I give you?)

창측으로 주세요.
chang-cheug-eu-ro ju-se-yo.
A window seat, please.

혹시 더 필요할 게 있으실니까?
hok-si deo pil-yo-ha-sin ge iss-eu-sim-ni-kka?
Is there anything more I can do for you? (lit. Are there any more things you need?)

이 카드에 마일리지 좀 넣어 주시겠어요?
i ka-deu-e ma-il-li-ji jom neo-eo ju-si-gess-eo-yo?
Can you please add my mileage (for this flight) onto this card?

이리 주심시오.
i-ri ju-sip-si-o.
May I have your card, please? (lit. Please give it to me.)

여기 순남 여권하고 보잉패스 있습니다.
yeo-gi son-nam yeo-kkwon-ha-go bo-ding-pae-sseu it-seum-ni-da.
Here are your passport and boarding pass.

게이트는 38번이고 좌석번호는 27A입니다.
ge-i-teu-neun sam-sip-pal-beon-i-go jwa-seok-beon-ho-neun
i-sep-chil-e-i-in-ni-da.
The gate number is 38 and your seat number is 27A.

즐거운 여행 되십시오.
jeul-geo-un yeo-haeng doe-sim-si-o.
Have a pleasant flight.

Lesson 10: Transportation

부산행 12시 30분 표 두 장만 주세요.
Please give me two tickets for the train that departs at 12:30 to Pusan.

두 장이요, 20,000원입니다.
Two tickets. That comes to 20,000 won.

12시 30분에 출발하면 몇 시에 부산에 도착하나요?
yeol-ttu-si sam-sip-bun-e chul-bal-ha-myeon-myeot-si-e
bu-san-e do-cha-ka-na-yo?
If the train leaves at 12:30, what time will it arrive in Pusan?

보통 5시간 정도 걸려요.
It usually takes about 5 hours.

가차 타는 데가 어디죠?
gi-cha ta-neun de-ga eo-di-jyo?
Where can I go to board the train? (lit. Where is the place to board the train?)

자기 건너편 첫 번째 플랫폼에 ‘부산행’이라고 써 있지요?
jeo-gi geon-neo-pyeon cheot-beon-jae peul-laet-pom-e
bu-san-haeng-i-ra-go sseo it-ja-yo?
You see the first platform across the track where a sign says “To Pusan,” right?

그 쪽에 가서 기다리세요.
Please go there and wait.
대화 Model Conversations

(1) 택시 타기 taek-si-ta-gi

기사: 어디까지 가십니까?
eo-di-kka-ji ga-sim-ni-kka?

이정호: 대학로까지 좀 부탁합니다.

기사: 알겠습니다. 그런데 좌승하지만 좌승 좌도 되겠습니까?
al-get-seum-ni-da. geu-reon-de joe-song-ha-ji-man
hap-seung jom hae-do doe-get-seum-ni-kka?

이정호: 네, 괜찮아요. 그러세요. 그런데 길이 많이 막히네요.
neg, gwaen-chan-a-yo. geu-reo-se-yo. geu-reon-de gi-l-i
man-i ma-ki-ne-yo.

기사: 서울 시내는 언제나 이래요. 그래도 주중이 주말보다
좀 낫지 않아요?
seo-ul si-nae-neun eon-je-na i-rae-yo. geu-rae-do
ju-jung-i ju-mal-bo-da jom nat-ji an-a-yo?

이정호: 큰일 난네요. 약속시간에 늦었는데...
keun-il nan-ne-yo. yak-sok-si-gan-e neuj-eon-neun-de.

기사: (잠시 후) 거의 다 왔는데 어디 세워 드릴까요?
(jam-si hu) geo-ui da wan-neun-de eo-di se-wo
deu-nil-kka-yo?

이정호: 자기 육교 밑에 세워 주세요.
jeo-gi yuk-gyo mit-e se-wo ju-se-yo.

기사: 요금은 9,600원 나왔습니다.
yo-geum-eun gu-cheon-yuk-baeg-won
na-wat-seum-ni-da.

이정호: 여기 10,000원이요. 잔돈은 그냥 가지세요.
yeo-gi man-won-i-yo. jan-don-eun geu-nyang ga-ji-se-yo.
기사: 고람합니다. 안녕히 가세요.
go-map-seum-ni-da. an-nyeong-hi ga-se-yo.

(2) 비행기 타기 bi-haeng-gi ta-gi

작업: 어서 오십시오. 여권하고 비행기표 좀 주시겠습니까?
eo-seo o-sip-si-o. yeo-kkwon-ha-go bi-haeng-gi-pyo jom ju-si-get-seum-ni-kka?

이정호: 여기 있습니다.
yeo-gi iss-eum-ni-da.

작업: 점은 몇 개나 부치실 걸니까?
jim-eun myeot gae-na bu-chi-sil kkeom-ni-kka?

이정호: 두 개요. 그리고 어안 가지고 타도 되죠?
du-gae-yo. geu-ri-go i-geon ga-ji-go ta-do doe-jyo?

작업: 네. 두 개까지 팬창습니다. 좌석은 어느 쪽으로 드릴까요?

이정호: 창측으로 주세요.
chang-cheug-eu-ri ju-se-yo.

작업: 좌석 더 필요한 게 있으십니까?
hok-si deo pil-yo-han ge iss-eu-sim-ni-kka?

이정호: 이 카드에 마일리지 좀 넣어 주시겠어요?
i ka-deu-e ma-il-li-ji jom neo-eo ju-si-gess-eo-yo?

작업: 네, 이리 주십시오.(창시 후) 여기 손님 여권하고 보안 패스 있습니다.
ne, i-ri ju-sip-si-o. (jam-si hu) yeo-gi son-nim yeo-kkwon-ha-go bo-ding-pae-sseu it-seum-ni-da.

이것들은 38번이고 좌석번호는 27A입니다. 좌석으로 되심시요.

이정호: 감사합니다.
gam-sa-ham-ni-da.

(3) 기차/고속버스 타기 gi-cha/go-sok-ppeo-sseu ta-gi

이정호: 부산행 12시 30분 표 두 장만 주세요.

작업: 두 장이요. 20,000원입니다.
du-jang-i-yo. i-man-won-im-ni-da.

이정호: 12시 30분에 출발하면 몇 시에 부산에 도착하나요?
yeol-ttu-si sam-sip-bun-e chul-bal-ha-myeon myeot si-e bu-san-e do-cha-ka-na-yo?

작업: 보통 5시간 정도 걸려요.

이정호: 그런데 기차 타는 데가 어디죠?
jen-reun-de gi-cha ta-neun de-ga eo-di-jyo?


이정호: 중간에 기차를 갈아타야 되나요, 아니면 바로 가나요?
jung-gan-e gi-cha-reul gal-a-ta-ya doe-na-yo, a-ni-myeon ba-ro ga-na-yo?

작업: 직행이니까 갈아타지 않으셔도 됩니다.
ji-kaeng-i-ni-kka gal-a-ta-ji an-eu-syeo-do dwae-yo.
Lesson 10: Transportation

Employee: Sure. May I have your card please? (after a while)
Here are your passport and boarding pass. The gate number is 38 and your seat number is 27A. Hope you have a pleasant flight.

Lee: Thank you.

(3) Riding a train/express bus

Lee: May I get two tickets for the train that departs at 12:30 to Pusan?

Employee: Two tickets. That comes to 20,000 won.

Lee: If the train leaves at 12:30, what time should I expect to arrive in Pusan?

Employee: It usually takes about 5 hours.

Lee: By the way, where do I go to board the train?

Employee: Do you see the first platform across the track where a sign says "To Pusan"? Please go there and wait.

Lee: Do I have to make a change trains, or does this train take me directly to Pusan?

Employee: This train will take you directly to Pusan, so you will not need to change trains.

Employee: Welcome. May I have your passport and plane ticket?

Lee: Here they are.

Employee: How many pieces of luggage will you be taking?

Lee: Just two. And I can take this one on board with me, right?

Employee: Sure. You may take up to two pieces of luggage with you. With the seat, which side do you prefer?

Lee: A window seat, please.

Employee: Is there anything more I can do for you?

Lee: Can you please add my mileage for this flight onto my card?
어휘 Vocabulary

Nouns / Pronouns

건너편 geon-neo-pyeon
게이트 ge-i-teu
고속버스 go-sok-beo-seu
그쪽 geu jjok
기사 gi-sa
기차 gi-ch'a
길 gil
d대학로 dae-hang-no
t두개 du-gae
d두 장 du-jang
마일리지 ma-il-li-ji
몇 개 myeoet-gae
몇시 myeoet-si
밀 mit
보딩패스 bo-ding-pae-sseu
두산 bu-san
부산행 bu-san-haeng
비행기 bi-haeng-gi
비행기표 bi-haeng-gi-pyo
서울 seo-ul
손님 son-nim
씨내 si-nae
약속시간 yak-sok-si-gan
어느쪽 eo-neu jjok
어디 eo-di
여권 yeo-kkwen
여기 yeo-gi
여행 yeo-haeng
요금 yo-geum
육교 yuk-gyo
across the street
gate
express bus
that side
driver
train
street, road
university street
two items
two sheets of paper
mileage
how many items?
what time?
under, beneath
boarding pass
Pusan
going to Pusan
airplane
airplane ticket
Seoul
guest, visitor, customer
downtown
appointment time
which way?
where?
passport
here
travel
fare
over pass

장돈 jan-don
저기 jeo-gi
좌석 jwa-seok
좌석번호 jwa-seok-beon-ho
주중 ju-jung
주말 ju-mal
직원 jig-won
직행 jik-haeng
점 jim
청축 chang-cheuk
첫번째 cheot-beon-ijjae
카드 ka-teu
t기 ta-gi
t금대 ta-neun de
택시 taek-si
표 pyo
플랫폼 puel-lact-pom
필요한 것 pil-yo-han geot
10,000원 sim-man-won
12시 30분 yeol-tu si sam-sip-bun
20,000원 i-sim-man-won
38번 sam-sip-pal-beon
5시간 da-seot-si-gan
9,600원 gu-cheon-yak-baeg-won
change
there
seat
seat number
weekdays
weekend
employee
non-stop, direct
baggage
window side
first
card
riding
place to ride
taxi
ticket
platform
things to be needed
10,000 won
12:30 pm
20,000 won
the number 38
5 hours
9,600 won

Verbs

가다 ga-da
g 가지고 타다 ga-ji-go ta-da
g 가지다 ga-ji-da
g 갈아타다 gal-a-ta-da
g 갈리다 geol-li-da
g 절리다 gwaen-chan-ta
g 그라다 geu-reo-da
to go
to ride having something
to have
to transfer
to take time
to be OK
to do so
가다다 gi-da-ri-da
나오다 na-o-da
낫다 nat-da
넓어 주다 neo-eo ju-da

꽃다 neut-da
도착하다 do-cha-ka-da
히다 doe-da
드리다 deu-ri-da
막히다 ma-ki-da

바로 가다 ba-ro ga-da
부지다 bu-cho-da
부탁하다 bu-ta-ka-da
세워 드리다 se-wo deu-ri-da
세워 주다 se-wo ju-da
쩌 있다고 sseo it-da
알다 al-da
오다 o-da
죄송하다 jae-song-ha-da
주다 ju-da
즐거다 jeul-geop-da
출발하다 chul-bai-ha-da
큰일 나다 keun-il na-da

타다 ta-da
함승하다 hap-seung-ha-da

to wait
to come out
to be better
to put on something (for someone)
to be late
to arrive
to become
to give (hon.)
to be blocked, to be jammed
to go directly
to send
to request
to stop (hon.)
to stop
to be written
to know
to come
to be sorry
to give
to be happy
to depart
to have a problem, to have trouble
to ride
to share a ride

아니면 a-ni-myeon
어서 eo-seo
언제나 eon-je-na
잠시 후 jam-si bu
좀 jom
중간에 jung-gan-e
혹시 hok-si

if not
quickly
always
after a while
a little, please
in the middle, on the way
just in case

Adverbs / Conjunctions

 거의 geo-ui
그냥 geu-nyang
그리고 geu-rae-do
보통 bo-tong

almost
just
although, even though
in general
문법 Grammar

(1) Ordinal Numbers

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Native ordinal numbers</th>
<th>Sino-Korean ordinal numbers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>첫째 척-jjae, 첫 번째 척-beon-jjae</td>
<td>제 일 회 je-nil-hoe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>두째 두-jjae, 두 번째 du-beon-jjae</td>
<td>제 이 회 je-i-hoe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>삼째 삼-jjae, 세 번째 se-beon-jjae</td>
<td>제 삼 회 je-sam-hoe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>네째 네-jjae, 네 번째 ne-beon-jjae</td>
<td>제 사 회 je-sa-hoe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>다섯째 다섯-jjae, 다섯 번째 vda-seot-beon-jjae</td>
<td>제 오 회 je-o-hoe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>여섯째 여섯-jjae, 여섯 번째 yeo-seot-beon-jjae</td>
<td>제 육 회 je-yu-hoe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>일곱째 일곱-jjae, 일곱 번째 il-gop-beon-jjae</td>
<td>제 셋 회 je-chil-hoe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>여덟째 여덟-jjae, 여덟 번째 yeo-doel-beon-jjae</td>
<td>제 팔 회 je-pal-hoe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>아홉째 a-hop-jjae, 아홉 번째 a-hop-beon-jjae</td>
<td>제 구 회 je-gu-hoe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>열째 yool-jjae, 열 번째 yool-p-eon-jjae</td>
<td>제 십 회 je-sip-hoe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>열세째 열세-jjae, 열세 번째 yool-si-s-ae-beon-jjae</td>
<td>제 십세 회 je-sis-ae-hoe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>열넷째 열넷-jjae, 열넷 번째 yool-ne-jjae</td>
<td>제 십 넘 회 je-sim-neu-hoe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>열여섯째 열여섯-jjae, 열여섯 번째 yool-yoel-beon-jjae</td>
<td>제 십 여섯 회 je-sip-yoel-hoe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>열세lest째 열세lest-jjae, 열세lest 번째 yool-selest-beon-jjae</td>
<td>제 십 세lest 회 je-sip-selest-hoe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>열일곱째 열일곱-jjae, 열일곱 번째 yool-il-gop-beon-jjae</td>
<td>제 십 일곱 회 je-sip-il-gop-hoe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>열여덟째 열여덟-jjae, 열여덟 번째 yool-yoel-p-eon-jjae</td>
<td>제 십 여덟 회 je-sip-yoel-p-eon-hoe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>열아홉째 열아홉-jjae, 열아홉 번째 yool-a-hop-beon-jjae</td>
<td>제 십 아홉 회 je-sip-a-hop-hoe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>스물 번째 su-mu-beon-jjae</td>
<td>제 아홉 번 회 je-i-si-poe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>스물 첫 번째 su-mul-chan-beon-jjae</td>
<td>제 아홉 번 회 je-i-si-chan-si-poe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>스물 두 번째 su-mul-then-beon-jjae</td>
<td>제 아홉 번 회 je-i-si-chan-si-poe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>스물 오 번째 su-mul-o-beon-jjae</td>
<td>제 아홉 번 회 je-i-si-chan-si-poe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>스물 네 번째 su-mul-ne-beon-jjae</td>
<td>제 아홉 번 회 je-i-si-chan-si-poe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>스물 살 번째 su-mul-sal-beon-jjae</td>
<td>제 아홉 번 회 je-i-si-chan-si-poe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>스물 배 번째 su-mul-bae-beon-jjae</td>
<td>제 아홉 번 회 je-i-si-chan-si-poe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>스물 건 번째 su-mul-geon-beon-jjae</td>
<td>제 아홉 번 회 je-i-si-chan-si-poe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>스물 헌 번째 su-mul-han-beon-jjae</td>
<td>제 아홉 번 회 je-i-si-chan-si-poe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>스물 백 번째 su-mul-bae-beon-jjae</td>
<td>제 아홉 번 회 je-i-si-chan-si-poe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>which 열째 myoet-jjae, 열 번째 myoet-beon-jjae</td>
<td>열째 myoet-hoe</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(2) Compound Sentences: ~아/어서 (a/eo-seo) vs. ~고 (go)

The ending ~아/어서 is used to connect two action or event clauses describing an action or event. The clauses are in chronological order, with the first always a precondition or cause of the second. The verb in the first clause cannot use the past tense, and the subject of the two clauses must be the same.

친구를 만나서 영화를 보어요.
I met my friend and then we went to see a movie.

When listing unrelated events, the ending ~고 is used. For example:

친구를 만나고 영화를 보어요.
chin-gu-reul man-na-go yeong-hwa-reul bwass-eyo.
I met my friend, and I went to see a movie.

(3) State of Being: ~아/어 있다 (a/eo it-da)

The pattern ~아/어 있다 means “in the state of being.” It describes the continuation of a state after a result has been had. The focus is on the current state and not on the action that led to the result.

Examples:

상자 안에 사과가 들어 있다.
sang-ja an-e sa-gwa-ga deul-eo it-da.
Apples are in the box.

정호는 한국에 가 있어요.
jeong-ho-neun han-gug-e ga iss-eyo.
Jung-Ho is in Korea.
Lesson 10: Transportation

The use of this ending contrasts with the use of ~고 있다, which indicates that a person or thing is in the midst of a process, e.g. (jeong-ho-neun ji-geum han-gug-e ga-go iss-eo-yo) “Jeong-Ho is now going to Korea.”

(4) Background Information: ~(착/있)는데 ((at/eat)-neun-de)

To supply background information about the situation in the main clause, the ending ~(착/있)는데 is used. It occurs in the following circumstances: when the speaker and listener are sharing information; when two clauses are contrasted; and when a request or proposal is justified. There are alternative forms. The ending ~(착/있)는데 is used with an active verb stem ending in 있/있, or ~있/있~. The ending ~(착/있)는데 is used with a descriptive verb stem. With a copula stem, the ending ~(착/있)는데 is used. In the past tense, ~있/있 is placed before ~(착/있)는데.

(5) Expressing Surprise, Admiration, or Sympathy: ~(으)니요 (ne-yo)

The ending ~(으)니요 indicates an exclamation. It is heard when the speaker hears something that contradicts their knowledge of a matter. The ending may be used in any tense, but it must always occur in a declarative sentence. It differs from the ending ~(으)니요, which indicates a neutral reaction.

(6) Rhetorical Questions: ~(지) 않아요? (ji an-a-yo?)

The long form of the negative, or ~(지) 않아요?, can be used as a rhetorical question. Using a negative question is a more polite way of stating a belief or an opinion. If the listener agrees, the response begins with 네 (ne), as in this exchange:

네, 정말 그럴네요.
ne, jeong-mal geu-reon-ne-yo.
Yes, it really is.

The words 맞아요 (maj-a-yo) and 그래요 (geu-rae-yo) may also be used to begin the sentence.

If the listener disagrees with the speaker, the appropriate response is 아니요 (a-ni-o). If the listener is uncertain, he or she responds with 글쎄요 (geul-ssa-yo).

요즘 날씨가 정말 춥지 않아요?
yo-jeum nal-ssi-ga jeong-mal chup-ji an-a-yo?
Isn’t the weather these days really cold?
Lesson 10: Transportation

(1) Means of Transportation

고속버스  
go-sok-ppeo-seu  
Express bus

기차  
ghi-cha  
Train

렌트카  
ren-teu-ka  
Rental car

배  
bae  
Boat, ship

버스  
beo-seu  
Bus

비행기  
bii-haeng-gi  
Airplane

오토바이  
o-to-ba-i  
Motorcycle

자동차  
a-jong-cha/jaga-hom  
Car (personal)

자전거  
a-jeon-geo  
Bike

지하철  
ji-ha-cheol  
Subway

택시  
taek-si  
Taxi

결어서  
geol-eo-seo

위어서  
twi-eo-seo

운전해서  
uhn-jeon-hae-seo

N(을/을) 타고 (eul/reul) ta-go

출발하는 곳  
chul-bal-ha-neun got

차 타는 곳  
cha-ja-neun got

보딩패스  
bo-ding-pae-seu

여권  
yeo-kkwon

비자  
bi-ja

비행기표  
bii-haeng-gi-pyo

비행장  
bii-haeng-jang/공항 gong-hang

국내선  
gung-nae-seon

국제선  
guk-je-seon

나가는 곳  
a-na-neun got

가다가는 곳  
gal-a-ta-neun got

왼쪽  
oen-jjok

오른쪽  
o-reun-jjok

express bus  
train  
rental car  
boat, ship  
bus  
airplane  
motorcycle  
car (personal)  
bike  
subway  
taxi

on foot, by walking  
by running  
by driving  
by riding (something)  
departure  
ground transportation  
boarding pass  
passport  
visa  
airline ticket  
airport  
domestic airlines  
international airlines

exit  
subway platform  
left  
right

신호등  
sin-ho-deung

횡단보도  
hoeng-dan-bo-do

육교  
yuk-gyo

지하도  
ji-ha-do

사거리  
sa-geo-ri

직진하다  
jik-jin-ha-da

동바로 가다  
ttok-ba-ro ga-da

뒤로가다  
doe-dol-a ga-da

좌회전하다  
jwa-hoe-jeon-ha-da

영복으로 가다  
oen-jjog-eu-ro ga-da

우회전하다  
u-hoe-jeon-ha-da

오른쪽으로 가다  
o-reun-jjog-eu-ro ga-da

무단횡단을 하다  
mii-dan hoeng-dan-eul ha-da

to go straight  
to go straight  
to go back  
to turn left  
to turn left  
to turn right  
to turn right  
to jaywalk

응급서가  
aem-byul-leon-seu

구급차  
gu-gjeup-cha

소방서  
sa-bang-seo

소방차  
sa-bang-cha

경찰  
gyeong-chal

경찰서  
gyeong-chal-sseo

ambulance  
ambulance  
fire department  
fire truck  
police  
police department
Lesson 10: Transportation

연습문제 Exercises

1. Please respond to the following:

(1) 어디까지 가십니까?  
eo-di-kka-ji ga-sim-ni-kka?
(2) 좌석지만 홀승 좁혀도 되겠습니다니까?  
joe-song-ha-ji-man hap-seung jom hae-do doe-get-seum-ni-kka?
(3) 가고 싶으시는데 어디 세워 드릴까요?  
geo-i da wan-neun-de eo-di se-wo deu-nil-kka-yo?
(4) 잔은 몇 개나 부치실 겁니까?  
jin-eun myeoet gae-na bu-chi-sil kkeom-ni-kka?
(5) 좌석은 어느 쪽으로 드릴까요?  
jwa-seog-eun eo-neu jhog-eu-ro deu-nil-kka-yo?
(6) 혹시 더 필요하신 게 있으십니까?  
hok-si deo pil-yo-han ge iss-eu-sim-ni-kka?

2. Please translate the following into English:

(1) 그래도 주차가 주말보다 좀 낮지 않아요?  
geu-rae-do ju-jung-i ju-mal-bo-da jom nat-ji an-a-yo?
(2) 여권하고 비행기표 좀 주시겠습니까?  
yeo-kkwon-ha-go bi-haeng-gi-pyo jom ju-su-get-seum-ni-kka?
(3) 12시에 출발하면 몇시에 무산에 도착하나요?  
yeol-ttu-si-e chul-bal-ha-myeon myeoet-si-e bu-san-e do-cha-ka-na-yo?
(4) 직행이니까 기차를 갈아타지 않으셔도 됩니다.  
(5) 게이트는 38번이고 좌석번호는 27A입니다.  
3. Please translate the following into Korean:

(1) It seems like all the roads are congested.
(2) Where can I go to board the train?
(3) Two tickets for the train departing at 1:00 for Pusan, please.
(4) Please drop me off under the overpass over there.
(5) Please keep the change.

4. Please write five things that you have to do during this week. Make sure to use ordinal numbers.

5. Please write a paragraph describing your experiences with public transportation.

Lesson 11: Banks & Post Offices
Lesson 11: Banks & Post Offices

이 신청서에 손님 성함하고 주소하고 비밀번호 종 써 주십시오.
i sin-cheong-seo-e son-nim seong-ham-ha-go ju-so-ha-go bi-nil-beon-ho jom seoo ju-sip-si-o.
On this application, please write your name, address, and pin number.

어떻게 쓰면 되나요?
i-reo-ke sseu-myeon doe-na-yo?
Is it OK if I write like this?

네, 됩니다. 현금카드도 필요하시죠?
ne, dwaet-seum-ni-da. hyeon-geum ka-deu-do pil-yo-ha-si-ji-yo?
Yes, it’s done. You need an ATM card too, right?

네, 해 주세요.
ne, hae ju-se-yo.
Yes, please do it for me.

장난 안 카다리세요.
Wait a minute, please.

여기 손님 통장하고 현금카드 있습니다.
Here is your balance (lit. account keeping) book and an ATM card.

환전하기
hwan-jeon-ha-gi
exchanging currency

환전을 좀 하고 싶은데요.
hwan-jeon-eul jom ha-go sip-eun-de-yo.
I would like to exchange some money.
오늘 환율이 어떻게 되나요?
o-neul hwan-nyul-i co-tteo-ke doe-na-yo?  
What is today's exchange rate?

달러당 1300원이에요.
dal-leo-dang cheon-sam-baeg-won-i-e-yo.  
1300 won per dollar.

 얼마나 바꾸시겠어요?
eol-ma-na ba-kku-si-ge-yo?  
How much do you want to exchange?

500불만 바꿔 주세요.
o-baek-bul-man ba-kkwo ju-se-yo.  
Just 500 dollars, please.

여기 신청서 좀 서 주시겠어요?
yeo-ge sin-cheong-seo jom sseo ju-si-gess-co-yo?  
Would you please fill out the application form here?

여권이나 신분증 좀 보여주세요.
yeo-kkwon-i-na sin-bun-jjeung jom bo-yeo-ju-se-yo.  
Please show me your passport or ID.

돈은 현금으로 드릴까요, 아니면 수표로 드릴까요?
don-eun hyeon-geum-eu-ro deu-nil-kkka-yo, a-ni-myeon su-pyo-ro deu-nil-kkka-yo?  
Do you want your money in cash or checks?

전부 수표로 주시고 잔돈만 현금으로 주세요.
jeon-bu su-pyo-ro ju-si-go jan-don-man hyeon-geum-eu-ro ju-se-yo.  
Please give me everything in checks and only the change in cash.

수수료 5,000원 공제하고 드렸습니다.
su-su-ryo o-cheon-won gong-je-ha-go deu-ryeot-seun-ni-da.  
I’ve taken out the 5,000 won processing fee and given you the rest.  
(lit. I gave you the rest after deducting the processing 5,000-won fee.)

편지 부치기
pyeon-ji bu-chi-gi  
sending mail

이거 샌디에이고까지 얼마나 걸릴까요?
i-geo saen-di-e-i-go-kka-ji eol-ma-na geol-lil-kkka-yo?  
How long will this take to get to San Diego?

여렇게 보내실 건데요?
eo-tteo-ke bo-nae-sil kkeon-de-yo?  
How would you want to send it?

제일 빨리 가는 것으로 해 주세요.
je-il ppal-ri ga-neun geos-eu-ro hae ju-se-yo.  
The fastest way, please.

속달우편은 3 일이면 되는데 좀 비싸요. 급하게요?
sok-dal-u-pyeon-eun sam-il-i-myeon doe-neun-de jom bi-ssa-yo.  
geu-pa-se-yo?  
Express mail will take three days, but it's a little expensive. Are you in a hurry?

별로요, 그림 어떻게 줄을까요?
byeol-lo-yo, geu-reom eo-tteon ge jo-eul-kkka-yo?  
Not really. Then what do you think is better?
Lesson 11: Banks & Post Offices

지난 주부터 우편요금이 인상됐기 때문에 이정 230원짜리를 사용하셔야 되는네요.
Because of the price increase last week, you will probably need to use 230-won stamps now.

그럼 230원짜리로 10장 주세요.
Then teu 230-won stamps, please.
대화 Model Conversations

(1) 통장 만들기 tong-jang man-deul-gi

작년: 어서 오세요, 손님. 어떻게 도와드릴까요?
    eo-seo-o se-yo, son-nim. eo-tteo-ke
    do-wa-deu-ril-kka-yo?

이정호: 통장을 하나 만들려고 하는데요.
    tong-jang-eul ha-na man-deul-lyeo-go ha-neun-de-yo.

작년: 그러세요? 그렇게 신분증하고 도장 써 주시겠습니까?
    geu-reo-se-yo? geu-reom sin-bun-jjeung-ha-go do-jang
    jom ju-si-get-seum-ni-kka?

이정호: 신분증은 어때요? 그리고 도장은 없는데요.
    sin-bun-jjeung-eun yeo-kkkwon-i myeon doe-jyo? geu-ri-
    go do-jang-eun eom-neun-de-yo.

작년: 갤참아요. 그냥 사인만 하셔도 되요. 얼마나 예금하시겠습니까?
    gwaen-chan-a-yo. geu-nyang sa-in-man ha-syeo-do
    dwae-yo. eol-ma-na ye-geum-ha si-get-seum-ni-kka?

이정호: 3만원이요.

작년: 이 신청서에 손님 성명하고 주소하고 비밀번호 짧게 쓰 주십시오.
    i sin-cheong-seo-e son-nim seong-ham-ha-go ju-so-ha-go
    bi-nil-beon-ho jom sseoo ju-sip-si-o.

이정호: (잠시 후) 이렇게 쓰면 되나요?
    (jam-si hu) i-reo-ke sseu-myeeoe doe-na-yo?

작년: 네, 됩니다. 업금카드도 필요하시죠?
    ne dwaet-seum-ni-da. hyeong-geum ka-deu-do
    pil-yo-ha si-jyo?

이정호: 네, 해 주세요.
    ne, hae ju-se-yo.

작년: 잘못된 가다리세요.... (잠시 후) 여기 손님 통장하고
    현금카드 있습니까. 안녕히 가십시오.
    jam-kkan-man gi-da-ri-se-yo. (jam-si hu) yeo-gi son-nim
    tong-jang-ha-go hyeong-geum-ka-deu i-si-seum-ni-da.
    an-nyeong-hi ga-sip-si-o.

(2) 현금기 흐وان-전-하-이

이정호: 현금을 좀 하고 싶은데요. 오늘 현금이 어때게 되나요?

작년: 흐وان-전-율 jom ha-go sip-eun-de-yo. o-neul
    hwan-nyul-i eot-tteo-ke doe-na-yo?

작년: 덜어당 1300원이에요. 얼마나 바꾸시게요?
    dal-leo-dang cheon-sam-baeg-won-i-e-yo. eol-ma-na
    ba-kku-si-ge-yo?

이정호: 5만불만 바꿔 주세요.

작년: o-baek-bul-man ba kkwò ju-se-yo.

작년: 그럼 여기 신청서 좀 써 주시겠어요? 그리고 여권이
    날 신분증 좀 보여주세요.

작년: geu-reom yeo-gi sin-cheong-seo jom sseoo ju-si-gess-
    eo-yo? geu-ti-goe yeo-kkkwon-i na sin-bun-jjeung jom
    bo-yeo-ju-se-yo.

이정호: 여기 있습니다.

작년: yeo-gi it-seum-ni-da.

작년: 돈은 현금으로 드릴까요? 아니면 수표로 드릴까요?
    don-eun hyeong-geum-eu-roe deu-ri-l-kka-yo. a-ni-myeon
    su-pyo-ro deu-ri-l-kka-yo?

이정호: 정부 수표로 주시고 전돈만 현금으로 주세요.
    jeon-bu su-pyo-ro ju-si-geo jan-don-man hyeong-geum-eu-
    ro ju-se-yo.

작년: (잠시 후) 여기 있습니다. 수표로 5,000원 공제하고 드
    렸습니다. 안녕히 가십시오.

작년: (jam-si hu) yeo-gi it-seum-ni-da. su-su-ryo o-cheon-
    won gong-je-ha-go deu-ryeot-seum-ni-da. an-nyeong-hi
    ga-sip-si-o.

이정호: 감사합니다.

    gam-sa-ham-ni-da.
Lesson 11: Banks & Post Offices

작문: 지난 주부터 우리예금이 인정했기 때문에 이젠 230원짜리를 사용하게 되는데요.

저는: 제일 짧게 하는 것으로 예를 들자요.

작문: 자물쇠를 떼어내는 것과 비슷해요. 금하는가요?

저는: 속달우편은 3일이면 되는데 좀 비싸요. 금하세요?

작문: 집할 수 있는 것과 비슷하지요?

저는: 그렇지. 그럼 어깨 골절이세요?

작문: 타나우편으로 보내시면 한 일주일 정도 걸려요.

저는: 그럼 그걸로 할게요.

작문: 타나우편으로 해 드릴까요?

저는: 아니요, 괜찮아요.

작문: 여기에 받으실 분 주소하고 성함 좀 써 주시겠어요?

저는: 저야, 세우야, 네, 더 필요하신 게 있으십니까?

작문: 네, 저희에게 전 전화번호,生肖-pil-yo-ha-sin-ge

저는: 200원짜리 우표 10장 주세요.

작문: 이 방법에 의하면 부처가 pyeon-ji bu-chi-gi

저는: 이거 산다이고까지 얼마나 걸려요?

작문: 어떻게 보내실 건데요?

저는: 제일 짧게 가능할 것으로 해 주세요.

작문: 낭달우편은 3일이면 되는데 좀 비싸요. 금하셔요?

저는: 집할 수 있는 것과 비슷해요. 금하셔요?

작문: 그렇게. 그럼 그걸로 할게요.

저는: 그렇게. 그럼 그걸로 할게요.

작문: 그렇게. 그럼 그걸로 할게요.
(1) Opening a bank account

Lee: How long will this take to go to San Diego?
Employee: The fastest way, please.
Lee: Not really. Then what do you think is better?
Employee: Express mail will take three days but it's a little expensive. Are you in a hurry?
Lee: Do you want it sent registered mail?
Employee: No, that's OK.
Lee: Would you please write the receiver's name and address here?

(2) Exchanging currency

Lee: I would like to exchange some money. What is today's exchange rate?
Employee: 1300 won per dollar. How much do you want to exchange?
Lee: Just 500 dollars, please.
Employee: Then would you please fill out this application form? And please show me your passport or ID.
Lee: Here it is.
Employee: Do you want your money in cash or checks?
Lee: Please give me everything in checks and only the change in cash.
Employee: Here it is. I took out the 5,000-won processing fee and gave it to you the rest. Good-bye.
Lee: Thank you.
이위 Vocabulary

Nouns / Pronouns

도장 do-jang
돈 don
등기우편 deung-gi-u-pyeon
위 mwo
받으실 분 bad-eu-sil bun
비밀번호 bi-mil-beon-ho

사인 sa-in
생활 seong-haen
속달우편 sok-dal-u-pyeon
손님 son-nim
수수료 su-su-ryo
수표 supyo
신분증 sin-bun-ijeung
신청서 sin-cheong-seo
여행 기 eo-ttione geo
여권 yeo-kkwon
오후 o-neul
우편요금 u-pyeon-yo-geum
우표 u-pyo
이거 i-geo
잔돈 jan-don
주소 ju-so
지난 주 ji-nan ju
직원 jig-won
통장 만들기 tong-jang man-deul-gi
통장 tong-jang
편지 부치기 pyeon-ji bu-chi-gi
필요하신 것 pil-yo-ha-sin geot
하나 ha-na

stamp, seal
money
registered mail
what?
receiver
pin (personal identification) number
signature
name (hon.)
express mail
customer
fee, charge
check
ID card
application
which one?
passport
today
postage, postal charge
stamp
this one
change
address
last week
employee
opening a bank account
bank account
sending a piece of mail
something needed (hon.)
one

Verbs

가다 ga-da
to go
감사하다 gam-sa-ha-da
to thank
갈리다 geol-li-da
to take time
g 소개하다 gong-je-ha-da
to deduct
그렇다 geu-reo-ta
to be so
급하다 geu-pa-da
to be hurry
가다리다 gi-da-ri-da
to wait
do와드리다 do-wa-deu-ri-da
to help (hon.)
도다 doe-da
to become
d리다 deu-ri-da
to give (hon.)
만들다 man-deul-da
to make
바꾸다 ba-kku-da
to change
바꿔 주다 ba-kkwo ju-da
to change
 보내다 bo-nae-da
to send
보여주다 bo-yeo-ju-da
to show
비싸다 bi-ssa-da
to be expensive
사용하다 sa-yong-ha-da
to use
써 주다 sseu-ju-da
to write
쓰다 sseo-da
to write
Grammar

(1) The Ending ~(으)ㄹ까요? (eu)-l-kka-yo?: “Shall I/we...?,” “Do you think...?”

The basic function of the ending ~(으)ㄹ까요? is to ask for the listener’s opinion. When the sentence’s subject noun is “I” or “we” (when the speaker is the subject or a part of the subject), the ending ~(으)ㄹ까요? is used. In addition to asking the listener’s opinion, it allows one to suggest or offer to do something. Examples:

법 빌어달까요?
mwo meog-eul-kka-yo?
What are we going to eat?

커피 마실까요?
keo-pi ma-sil-kka-yo?
Shall we drink some coffee?

When used in the third person, the speaker is asking for the listener’s opinion (i.e. “do you think...?”). Examples:

길이 목욕할까요?
gil-i bok-ja-pal-kka-yo?
Do you think the traffic will be busy?

일이 어려울까요?
il-i eo-ryeo-ul-kka-yo?
Do you think the task is difficult?
When used in the form ~(으)ㄹ+으+..., ~(으)ㄹ+으+? the listener is given alternatives from which to choose. For example:

커피를 마실까요, 주스를 마실까요?
keo-pi-reul ma-sil-kka-yo, ju-seu-reul ma-sil-kka-yo?
Shall we drink coffee or juice?

Use ~을/를+으+when the verb stem ends in any consonant except ㄹ. When the consonant is ㄹ, use ~을+으. When the stem ends in a vowel, ~을/를+으 is used.

(2) The Volitional: ~고 싶다 (go sip-da) vs. ~고 싶어하다 (go sip-eo-ha-da) “want to,” “would like to”

The pattern ~고 싶다 is used to state either what the speaker wishes to do or to ask what the listener would want. When indicating what a third person would want, one uses the ending ~고 싶어하다.

The past tense of ~고 싶어요 (go sip-eo-yo) /~고 싶어해야요 (go sip-eo-ha-yo) is ~고 싶어요 (go sip-eoss-eo-yo) /~고 싶어해야요 (go sip-eoa-hae-eo-yo), respectively; and the future prospective tense is ~고 싶을 거예요 (go sip-eul kkeo-ye-yo) /~고 싶어할 거예요 (go sip-eol hal kkeo-ye-yo).

Examples:

저는 한국에 가고 싶어요.
jeo-neun han-gug-e ga-go sip-eo-yo.
I want to go to Korea.

정호는 한국에 가고 싶어요.
jeong-ho-neun han-gug-e ga-go sip-eo-ha-yo.
Jeong-ho wants to go to Korea.

(3) Stating Cause: 때문에 (ttae-mun-e), ~기 때문에 (gi ttae-mun-e), and ~이/여서 (a/eo-seo) “because, because of”

The pattern ~기 때문에 is used when the speaker wishes to give a reason for something. It is the equivalent of the English prepositions “because” or “because of.” It is affixed to the verb stem, and can be used with a tense marker. It tends to be formal and often occurs in formal settings and in writing. The word 때문에 is used when the cause referred to is a noun.

When the sentence relates that something progresses from something else, rather than being its cause, the ending ~이/여서 is used. It cannot take any tense marker, and is most appropriate in the context of an apology, excuse, or when expressing gratitude. For example:

늘어서 죄송합니다.
neuj-eo-seo jee-song-ham-ni-da.
I am sorry [because] I am late.
Neither ~기 때문에 or ~어서 may be used with a command (the imperative), or when making a proposition or suggestion.

(4) Expressing Intention: ~(으)려고 하다 ((eu)-ryeo-go ha-da) vs. ~(으)려 ((eu)-reo)

To express an intention to perform a future action or to convey that something is about to happen, one uses the pattern ~(으)려고 하다. It can be used with any verb. This is in contrast to the pattern ~(으)려, with which only verbs of coming or going can be used.

Examples:

오늘을 일찍 자려고 해요.
o-neul-eun il-jirok ja-ryeo-go hae-yo.
I plan to go to sleep early today.

버스가 지금 떠나려고 해요.
beo-sseu-ga ji-geum tteo-na-ryeo-go hae-yo.
The bus is about to depart.

텔레비전을 보려고 해요.
tel-le-jeon-eul bo-ryeo-go hae-yo.
I am going to watch TV.

일하러 회사에 가요.
il-ha-reo hoe-sa-e ga-yo.
I go to the office to work.

의사 선생님을 만나려 병원에 왔어요.
I came to the hospital to meet a doctor.

(5) The Pattern ~(으)면 된다 ((eu)-myeon doe-da) “it would do if…”, “it would be good/all right if…”

The pattern ~(으)면 된다, which means “it would do if…,” or “it would be good/all right if…,” is used when indicating what is needed to perform an action or resolve a situation. When emphasizing that only one thing is needed, follow the noun with 만 (man) and affix ~(으)면 돼요 to the verb stem. This pattern is best translated as “all one has to do is…”

(6) Money-related Expressions

돈을 찾아 don-eul chat-da to withdraw money
don-eul beol-da to earn money
don-eul sseu-da to spend money
don-eul bu-chi-da to send money
don-eul bat-da to receive money
don-eul ju-da to give money
don-eul tta-da to win money
don-eul il-ta to lose money
don-eul il-eo-beo-ri-da to misplace money
don-eul jup-da to find money
don-eul mat-gi-da to save money
don-eul deul-da to need money
Lesson 11: Banks & Post Offices

Korean Currency

The unit of Korean currency is the won (원), which comes from the Chinese character for “circle.” There are five different coins in use:

1원 (일원 il-won)
10원 (십원 sib-won)
50원 (오십원 o-sib-won)
100원 (백원 baeg-won)
500원 (오백원 o-baeg-won)

There are three denominations of paper currency:

1000원 (천원 cheon-won)
5000원 (오천원 o-cheon-won)
10,000원 (만원 man-won)

Official checks are similar to traveler’s checks, and are issued at a bank.

Checks: 수표 su-pyo (자가임수표 ja-gi-ap su-pyo)

One U.S. dollar is equal to approximately 1000 won.

Additional Vocabulary:

환율 hwan-nyul  
수수료 su-su-ryo  
은행거래신청서 eun-haeng-geo-rae-sin-cheong-seo  
입금표 ip-geum-pyo  

exchange rate  
fee, charge  
bank account  
application  
deposit slip  
withdrawal slip  
pin number  
deposit and withdrawal record  
seal, stamp  
ATM card  
ATM machine  
the exchange rate goes down  
the exchange rate goes up  
to exchange money  
to withdraw  
to deposit  
to deposit  
to buy a stamp  
to put on a stamp  
to receive a letter/package  
to send a letter/package  
to write a letter  
to write a reply  
to write an address  
recipient  
sender  
address  
name  
name  
central post office
Lesson 11: Banks & Post Offices

문화적 참고 사항 Cultural Note

Banks in Korea are usually open from 9:00 A.M. to 4:30 P.M. during the weekdays and closed on weekends. All banks provide currency exchange services. Customers pay utility bills at the bank, and any number of services, including balance transfers, can be done at an ATM.

Korea is cash oriented society. Many small shops do not accept credit cards, and personal checks do not exist. Only banks can issue checks.

Post offices are usually open on weekdays from 9:00 A.M. to 5:00 P.M., and Saturdays from 9:00 A.M. to 1:00 P.M. They offer a great deal more than the U.S. postal service. One can do one’s banking, mail-order local specialties, make train reservations, or buy express bus tickets. In the majority of offices, one can buy stamps from vending machines. When sending mail, one must address the envelope in macro-to-micro style, beginning with the country and ending with the person’s name.
연습문제 Exercises

1. Please respond to the following:

(1) 어서 오세요, 손님. 어떻게 도와드릴까요?
   eo-seo o-se-yo, son-nim. eo-tteo-ke do-wa-deu-ri-lkk-ya-yo?
(2) 얼마나 예금하시겠습니까?
   eol-ma-na ye-geum-ha-si-get-seum-ni-kka?
(3) 얼마나 바껴 드릴까요?
   eol-na-na ba-kkwo deu-ri-lkk-ya-yo?
(4) 돈을 현금으로 드릴까요, 수표로 드릴까요?
   don-eun hyeon-geum-eu-ro deu-ri-lkk-ya-yo, su-pyo-ro deu-ri-lkk-ya-yo?
(5) 이 소포 어떻게 보내실 건니까?
   i so-po eo-tteo-ke bo-nae-sil kkeom-ni-kka?

2. Please translate the following into English:

(1) 신분증은 여권이면 되죠? 그리고 도장은 없는데요.
(2) 이 신청서에 손님 성함하고 주소하고 비밀번호 좀 써 주실시오.
   i sin-cheong-seo-e son-nim seong-ham-ha-go ju-so-ha-go bi-mil-beon-ho jom sseo ju-sip-si-o.
(3) 돈을 전부 수표로 주시고 잔돈이 현금으로 주세요.
(4) 손님은 3일에만 되는데 좀 비싸요. 급하게요?
   sok-dal u-pyeon-eun sam-il-i-meon doe-neun-de jom bi-ssa-yo. geu-pa-se-yo?
(5) 항공편으로 보내시면 한 일주일 정도 걸려요.

3. Please translate the following into Korean:

(1) I would like to have a bank account.
(2) Would you please give me your ID and signature stamp?
(3) You need an ATM card, right?
(4) What is today’s exchange rate?
(5) I took out the 5,000-won processing fee is taken out and gave you the rest.

4. Please write the meaning of the phrases below and write sentences using them:

(1) 돈을 찾아 dot-eul chat-da
(2) 돈을 벌다 dot-eul beol-da
(3) 돈을 부치다 dot-eul bu-chi-da
(4) 돈을 빼다 dot-eul tta-da
(5) 돈이 드다 dot-i deul-da

5. Please read the following numbers in Korean:

(1) 250원
(2) 78,350원
(3) 469,700원
(4) 1,257,800원
(5) 34,500,000원
6. Please write a paragraph about an experience in either a bank or a post office.

Lesson 12: Hospitals & Drugstores
Lesson 12: Hospitals & Drugstores

표현 Patterns

어서 오세요. 어떻게 오셨어요?
I feel cold and I am sweating, and I'm coughing constantly.

eo-seo o-se-yo, eo-tteo-ke o-syeoss-eo-yo?

nok-do a-peu-go-yo, sum-do jal mot swi-gess-eo-yo.
My throat also hurts. And I cannot breathe easily.

Welcome. What brings you here? (lit. What did you come here for?)

광기에 걸린 것 같아서요.
gam-gi-e geol-lin geot gat-a-seo-yo.
It's because I think I caught a cold.

요즘 괴기가 정말 독하지요?
yo-jeum gam-gi-ga jeong-mal do-ka-ji-ye?
The colds these days are really severe, right?

장갑만 챙기 알리어서 기다리세요.
Please sit there and wait a moment.

보험카드 좀 주시겠어요?
bo-heom-ka-deu jom ju-si-gess-eo-yo?
Would you please give me your health insurance card?

여기 있어요.
yeo-gi iss-eo-yo.
Here it is.

여디가 어때요 야프세요?
eo-di-ga ee-tteo-ke a-peu-se-yo?
Where and how do you feel sick?

광기에 걸린 것 같는데 어지럽고 기운이 없어요.
gam-gi-e geol-lin geot gat-eun-de eo-jyeoog-go gi-un-i eops-eo-yo.
I think I have a cold; I feel dizzy and have no energy.

너무 어지러워서 안아 있을 수가 없어요.
neu-mu eo-jji-reo-wo-seo anj-a iss-eul ssu-ga eops-eo-yo.
I feel so dizzy that I cannot stay seated.

지금도 자꾸 눕고 싶어요.
ji-geum-do ja-kku nup-go sip-eo-yo.
Even now I want to lie down.

언제부터 설사하기 시작했어요?
eon-je-bu-teo seol-ssa-ha-gi si-ja-kaess-eo-yo?
When did your diarrhea start?

한 이틀 전부터요.
han i-teul jeon-bu-teo-yo.
About two days ago.

이쪽으로 앉아 보세요.
i-jjog-eru ro anj-a bo-se-yo.
Please sit here.

송을 크게 쉬어 보세요.
sun-eul keu-ge swi-eo bo-se-yo.
Take a deep breath, please.
Lesson 12: Hospitals & Drugstores

그럼 다랭이네요.
geu-reom da-haeng-i-ne-yo.
That's good. (lit. That would be fortunate.)

어떻게 오셨습니까?
eo-teo-ke o-syeot-seum-ni-kka?
What brings you here?

이 tremend 저주 봉고 양치질할 때 턱에서 자꾸 피가 나오요.
in-mom-i ja-ju but-go yang-chi-jil hal tae in-mom-e-seo ja-kkut pi-ga na-yo.
My gums are frequently swollen, and I often bleed when I brush my teeth.

그래요? 좀 불غا요?
geu-rae-yo? jom bol-kka-yo?
Really? Can I see it for a moment?

중상이 별로 심하지는 않군요.
It is not that serious. (lit. The symptom is not that serious.)

그래도 치료를 좀 해야겠습니다.
But you have to get some treatment. (lit. But we still have to treat it.)

좀 아프실 것입니다. 조금만 참으세요.
jom a-peu-sil kkeom-ni-da. jo-geum-man cham-eu-se-yo.
It will hurt a little bit. Just endure it for a bit, please.

다 왔습니다. 이제 양치질 하십시오.
da dwae-seum-ni-da. i-je yang-chi-jil ha-sip-si-o.
It's all done. Now rinse your mouth, please.
Lesson 12: Hospitals & Drugstores

이 암약은 하루에 3번째 식후에 2알씩 드세요.
i al-lyag-eun ha-ru-e se-beon-ssik si-ku-e du-al-ssik deu-se-yo.
With these pills, please take two after every meal, three times a day.

이 울약은 아침저녁 공복에 한컵씩 드세요.
i mul-lyag-eun a-chim-jeo-nyeok gong-bog-e han-keop-ssik deu-se-yo.
With this liquid, please take one cup in the morning and in the after-
noon on an empty stomach.

치주염 예방용 치약을 사용하세요.
chi-ju-yecom ye-bang-nyong chi-ya-ka-go peul-lo-sseu-rang ma-
sseu-wo-ssi-do ha-na ju-se-yo.
Please give me an anti-peridentitis toothpaste, a box of floss, and a
bottle of mouthwash, too.

어떤 회사 제품으로 드릴까요?
eo-steen hoe-sa je-pum-eu-ro deu-ril-kka-yo?
What brand do you prefer?

아무 회사 거나 다 랜창아요.
a-mu hoe-sa kkeo-na da gwaen-chan-a-yo.
Any one would be OK.
대화 Model Conversations

(1) 병원에서 byeong-won-e-seo
간호원: 어서 오세요. 어떻게 오셨어요?
eo-seo o-se-yo. eo-teo-ke o-syees-seo-e-yo?
이혜근: 감기에 걸린 것 같아서요.
gam-gi-e geol-lin-geot gat-a-seo-yo.
간호원: 요즘 감기가 정말 독하지요? 잠깐만 자기 앉아서 기 다리세요. 참, 보험카드 좀 주시겠어요?
yo-jeum gamogi-ga jeong-mal do-ka-ji-yo?
cham, bo-heom-ka-deu jom ju-si-gess-eo-yo?
이혜근: 여기 있어요.
yeo-gi iss-seo-yo.

(잠시 후 jam-si hu)

의사: 어디가 아프세요?
eo-di-ga eo-teo-ke a-peu-se-yo?
이혜근: 감기에 걸린 것 같는데 어지럽고 기분이 없어요.
gam-gi-e geol-lin geot gat-eun-de eo-ji-reopp-go
gi-un-i eops-eo-yo.
졸고 땅이 나면서 기침을 자주 해요. 목도 아프고요.
chup-go ttaam-i na-myeon-seo gi-chim-eul ja-bku hae-yo.
mok-do a-peu-go-yo.
그리고 솜도 잘 못 싸웠고요, 어제 발새도록 실차하고 토쳤어요.
geu-ri-go sum-do jal mot swi-get-go-yo, eo-je
bam-sae-do-rok segi-ssa-ha-go to-haess-eo-yo.
너무 어지러워서 안아 있을 수가 없어요. 지금도 자꾸 눕고 싶어요.
neo-mu eo-ji-reo-wo-seo anj-a iss-eul su-ga eops-eo-yo.
ji-geam-do ja-bku nup-go sip-eo-yo.

의사: 언제부터 실차하기 시작했어요?
eon-je-beu-teo seol-ssa-ha-gi si-ja-kaess-eo-yo?
이혜근: 한 이월 전부터요.
han i-teul jeon-bu-teo-yo.
의사: 이쪽으로 앉아 보세요... 손을 크게 쉬어 보세요...
‘아’ 해 보세요...
i-jjok-eu-ro anj-a b-se-yo. sun-eul keu-ge swi-eo bo-se-yo.
a hae bo-se-yo.
검사를 좀 해야 되겠는데요, 마지막으로 생리하신 게 언제지요?
geom-sa-reul jom hae-ya doe-gen-neun-de-yo.
ma-ji-mag-eu-ro saeng-ni-ha-sin ge eon-je-ji-yo?
이혜근: 지난 달 15일이요. 상태가 어땠어요?
ji-nan dal sib-o-il-i-yo. sang-tac-ga eo-teon-ga-yo?
의사: 검사를 해 봤어 알겠지만 침염에 걸린 것 같아요.
이혜근: 그래요? 그럼 어떻게 하지요?
geu-rae-yo? geu-reom eo-teo-ke ha-ja-yo?
의사: 요즘은 좀은 약이 많이가 걱정 많이 안 하셔도 괜찮아요.
yo-jeun-eun jo-eun yag-i man-eu-ni-kka geok-jeong
man-i an ha-syeco-do gwaen-chan-a-yo.
이혜근: 그럼 다행이네요.
geu-reom da-haeng-i-ne-yo.

(2) 치과에서
의사: 어떻게 오셨습니까?
eo-teo-ke o-syoes-seum-ni-kka?
이혜근: 잇몸이 자주 빼고 양치질할 때 잇몸에서 자꾸 피가 난요.
in-mom-i ja-ju but-go yang-chi-jil-hal tae in-mom-e-seo ja-bku pi-ga-na-yo.
geu-rae-yo? jom bol-kka-yo? jeung-sang-i byeol-lo
sim-han-ji-neun an-kun-yo.
그래도 치료를 좀 해야겠습니다.
 좀 아프실 겁니다. 조금만 참으세요.
jom a-peu-sil kkeom-ni-da. jo-geum-man cham-eu-se-yo.
(장식 후) 더 했습니다. 이제 약치질 하십시오.
jam-si hu da dwaet-seum-ni-da. i-je yang-chi-jil
ha-sip-si-o.

이해근: 잇몸이 왜 자꾸 그러지요?
in-mom-i wae ja-ku ku gu-eu-reo-ji-yo?

의사: 잇몸이 좀 약한 사람들이 있어요. 약치질할 때 꼭 치
주염 예방용 치약을 사용하세요.
in-mom-i jom ya-kan sa-ram-deul-l iss-ee-yo.
yang-chil-jil-hal ttae kkok chi-ju-yeom ye-bang-nyong
chi-yag-eul sa-yong-ha-se-yo.
그리고 약치질한 다듬에 플로스하고 마우스위시 꺼
하시고요.
geu-ri-go yang-chil-jil-han da-cum-e peul-lo-ssu-ha-go
ma-u-ssu-wo-ssi kkok ha-si-go-yo.
플로스 사용하실 줄은 알지요?
peul-lo-ssu sa-yong-ha-sil jul-eun al-ji-yo?

이해근: 네, 알아요.
ne, al-a-yo.

(3) 약국에서 yak-gug-e-seo

약사: 어서 오세요. 월드와 드릴까요?
ee-seo o-se-yo. mwol do-wa deu-ri-ll-kka-yo?

이해근: 의사 선생님이 처방전을 주셨는데요.
ui-sa seon-saeng-nim-i cheo-bang-jeon-eul
ju-syeon-neun-de-yo.

약사: 그래요? 이리 주세요... 창만 가다리세요.
geu-reo-se-yo? i-ri ju-se-yo. jam-kkan-man

Lesson 12: Hospitals & Drugstores
영문번역  
English Translation

(1) At a hospital
Nurse: Welcome. How may I help you?
Lee: I think I have a cold.
Nurse: The colds these days are really severe, right? Please sit there and just wait a moment. Oh, would you please give me your health insurance card?
Lee: Here it is.

(after a while)

Doctor: Where and how does it hurt?
Lee: I think I have a cold; I feel dizzy and have no energy. I am cold and sweating, and I am coughing constantly. My throat hurts, too. And I cannot breathe easily, and I had diarrhea and threw up all night yesterday. I feel so dizzy that I cannot sit down properly. Even now I would like to lie down.

Doctor: When did you start having diarrhea?
Lee: About two days ago.

Doctor: Please sit here... Take a deep breath. Say “Ah!” We need to do some tests. How long has it been since your last period?
Lee: I had it on the 15th of last month. How is my condition?

Doctor: I’ll see the details after the tests, but I think you have enteritis.
Lee: Really? Then what should I do?
Doctor: Because there are lots of good medicines these days, you don’t need to worry too much.
Lee: That would be good.

(2) At a dentistry

Dentist: What brings you here?
Lee: My gums get frequently swollen, and I often bleed when I brush my teeth.

Dentist: Really? Let me see... It is not that serious. But you still need some treatment. This will hurt a bit. Please be patient. (after a while) It’s all done. Now rinse your mouth, please.

Lee: What’s happening on my gum?
Dentist: There are some people who have weaker gums. For sure, please use an anti-peridentitis toothpaste whenever you brush your teeth. And don’t forget to floss and use mouthwash every time you brush your teeth. You know how to use floss, right?

Lee: Yes, I know.

(3) At a pharmacy

Pharmacist: Welcome. How may I help you?
Lee: My doctor gave me a prescription.

Pharmacist: Is that so? Please give it to me. Please wait for a minute. (after a while) With these pills, please take two after every meal, three times a day. And with this liquid, please take one cup in the morning and in the afternoon on an empty stomach.

Lee: OK, I understand. Oh, and give me an anti-peridentitis toothpaste, a box of floss, and a bottle of mouthwash, please.

Pharmacist: Do you have any preference?
Lee: Any one would be OK.
Lesson 12: Hospitals & Drugstores

치주염 chi-ju-yeom
gum disease
플로스 peul-lo-seu
floss
회사 hoe-sa
company
15일 sib-o-il
15 days
2 (두) 알씨 du-al-ssik
2 pills (each time)
3(세)번씨 se-beon-ssik
3 times (a day)

Verbs

감기에 걸리다 gam-gi-e géol-li-da
to catch a cold
g 걱정하다 geok-jeong-ha-da
to worry
g 검사를 한다 geom-sa-reul ha-da
to get examined
g 그렇다 geu-rea-ta
to be so
g 기다리다 gi-da-ri-da
to wait
g 기분이 없다 gi-un-i eop-da
to have no energy
g 기침을 하다 gi-chim-eul ha-da
to cough
g 놀다 nup-da
to lay down
g 다 되다 da doe-da
to be finished
g 다혈이다 da-haeng-i-da
to be lucky
g 도와 드리다 do-wa deu-ri-da
to help (hon.)
g 드리다 deu-ri-da
to be strong, to be severe
g 드리다 deu-ri-da
to give (hon.)
g 읽다 deul-da
to take
g 읽이 나다 ttam-i na-da
to sweat
g 많다 man-ta
to be many
g 보다 bo-da

to see
g 못다 but-da
to be swollen
g 사용하다 sa-yong-ha-da
to use
g 생리하다 saeng-ri-ha-da
to be having one’s period,
to be menstruating

g 설사하다 seol-ssa-ha-da
to have diarrhea
g 손을 쉬다 sum-eul swi-da
to breathe
g 심하다 sim-ha-da
to be serious
g ‘아’하다 a-ha-da
to say “ah”
Lesson 12: Hospitals & Drugstores

요즘 yo-jeum
이제 i-je
자꾸 ja-kku
자주 ja-ju
잠깐만 jam-kkan-man
지기 jeo-gi
잠말 jeong-mal
조금만 jo-geum-man
지금도 ji-geum-do
참 cham
크게 keu-ge
하루에 ha-ru-e
한 이틀 전 han i-teul jeon
한 컵씩 han-keop-ssik

these days
now
again and again
often
for a minute
there
really
a little
even now
oh
widely, big, loudly
per day
about two days ago
one cup (at a time)

to be hurt, to be sick
to be sick
to sit
to be sitting
to know
to be weak
to brush one’s teeth
to be how?
to be dizzy

to have intestinal trouble
to be patient
to feel cold, to be cold
to treat
to vomit
to bleed

Adverbs / Prepositions / Conjunctions

공복에 gong-bog-e
그라도 geu-rae-do
그리고 geu-ri-go
곳 kkok
너무 neo-mu
마지막으로 ma-jim-eu-ro
방패도록 bam-sae-do-rok
별로 byeol-lo
식후에 sik-hu-e
아무 a-mu
어디 co-di
어면 co-teon
어찌게 co-teo-ke
어서 co-seo
언제 con-je
왜 wae

on an empty stomach
even it is true
and
for sure
too
at last
for all night
not particularly
after a meal
any
where
which, a certain
how
quickly
when
why
## 문법 Grammar

(1) **Number of Days (using cardinal numbers)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sino-Korean</th>
<th>Native Korean</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>one day</td>
<td>일일 il-il</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>two days</td>
<td>이일 i-il</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>three days</td>
<td>삼일 sam-il</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>four days</td>
<td>사일 sa-il</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>five days</td>
<td>오일 o-il</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>six days</td>
<td>육일 yug-il</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>seven days</td>
<td>칠일 chil-il</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eight days</td>
<td>팔일 pal-il</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nine days</td>
<td>구일 gu-il</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ten days</td>
<td>십일 sib-il</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fifteen days</td>
<td>십오일 sib-o-il</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>twenty days</td>
<td>이십일 i-sib-il</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(2) **The Pattern ～기 시작하다 (gi si-ja-ka-da) “begin to...”, “start to...”**

One uses the pattern ～기 시작하다 to indicate that one is beginning or starting to perform an action. In the past tense (began to, begun to), one uses ～기 시작했어요 (gi si-ja-kaess-eo-yo). With the future tense (will begin to), the ending ～기 시작할 거예요 (gi si-ja-kal kkeo-ye-yo) is used.

(3) **The Pattern ～(으)ㄹ 수 있다/없다 ((eu)ㅣ ssu it-da/eop-da) “can / cannot...” vs. ～(으)ㄹ 줄 알다/모른다 ((eu)ㅣ jul al-da/mo-reu-da) “know / don’t know how to...”**

When the pattern ～(으)ㄹ 수 있다/없다 is affixed to a verb, it indicates that one can or cannot perform the action in question. It is equivalent to the verb+EventListener followed by the verb stem with the suffix ~지 못하다. One's capability or lack thereof can be due to any number of reasons. Examples:

테니스를 칠 줄 알지만 비가 와서 오늘은 절 수 없어요.

I know how to play tennis, but I cannot play today because it is raining.

볼고기를 만들 줄 알지만 고기가 없어서 지금은 만들 수 없어요.

I know how to cook bull-go-gi, but I cannot make it now because I don’t have beef.

The pattern ～(으)ㄹ 줄 알다/모른다 is restricted to indicating one’s knowledge or lack of it regarding performing the action.

(4) **Expressing Concurrent Actions: ～(으)면서 ((eu)-myeon-seo) “while...”**

To indicate that two actions are concurrent, one uses the pattern ～(으)면서, the equivalent of the English “while.” The tense of the actions should only be indicated in the final clause. Examples:

받을 먹으면서 텔레비전을 보어요.

I am watching TV while I am eating.
(5) Washing

Although the word *wash* in English is used to describe most acts of hygiene and cleaning, Korean uses different verbs according to what is being washed.

순/발을 씻다 son/bal-eul ssit-da  to wash one’s hands/feet
양치질을 하다 yang-chi-jil-eul ha-da  to wash one’s teeth
이름 닦다 i-reul dak-da  to brush one’s teeth
세수를 하다 se-su-reul ha-da  to wash one’s face
머리를 감다 meo-ri-reul gam-tta  to wash one’s hair
샤워를 하다 sya-wo-reul ha-da  to take a shower
목욕을 하다 mog-yog-eul ha-da  to take a bath
빨래를 하다 ppal-la-eul reul ha-da  to do laundry
 설거지를 하다 seol-geo-ji-reul ha-da  to wash dishes

(6) Emotions and Feelings

기쁘다 gi-ppeu-da  to be happy
슬프다 seul-peu-da  to be sad
스트레스가 많다/싶다 seu-teu-re-sseu-ga man-ta/ssaa-i-da  to be stressed
  seu-teu-re-sseu-ga pul-li-da  to relieve stress
좋다 jo-ta  to be good
싫다 sil-ta  to not be likable
신나다 sin-na-da  to be excited
심심하다 sim-sim-ha-da  to feel bored
지루하다 ji-ru-ha-da  to be bored to death
피곤하다 pi-gon-ha-da  to be tired
Medical Services

약을 먹다 yang-eul meok-da  
 종합검사를 하다/bat-da  
 jong-hap-geom-sa-reul ha-da/bat-da  
 주사를 맞다 ju-sa-reul mat-da  
 진활을 하다/bat-da  
 jin-chal-eul ha-da/bat-da  
 입원하다 ib-won-ha-da  
 되원하다 toe-won-ha-da  
  
Body Parts

가슴 ga-seum  
 귀 gwi  
 눈 nun  
 다리 da-ri  
 등 deung  
 머리 meo-ri  
 목 mok  
 목 뿌 fu-reup  
 발 bal  
 발가락 bal-kka-rak  
 발바에 ba-e  
 손 son  
 손가락 son-kka-rak  
 어깨 eo-kkae  
 어깨 굴 eol-gul  
 영영이 eong-deong-i  
 이 i  
 입 ip  
 코 ko  
 목 teok  
 팔 pal  
 허리 heo-ri  

chest/breast  
 car  
 eye  
 leg  
 back  
 head  
 neck  
 knee  
 foot  
 toe  
 belly  
 hand  
 finger  
 shoulder  
 face  
 butt, hip  
 tooth  
 mouth  
 nose  
 chin  
 arm  
 waist
Symptoms

- 감기에 걸리다 (gam-gi-e geol-li-da) - to have a cold
- 기운이 없다 (gi-un-i eop-da) - to be lacking in energy
- 기침을 하다 (gi-chim-eul ha-da) - to cough
- 다치다 (da-chi-da) - to get injured
- 머리가 아프다 (moe-ri-ga a-peu-da) - to have a headache
- 목감기에 걸리다 (mok-gam-gi-e geol-li-da) - to have a sore throat
- 목이 뜯다 (mok-i buk-da) - to have a sore throat
- 배가 아프다 (bae-ga a-peu-da) - to have stomach pain
- 삼치가 나다 (sang-cheo-ga na-da) - to get hurt
- 설사를 하다 (seq-sa-reul ha-da) - to have diarrhea
- 소화가 안 되다 (so-hwa-ga an-do-e-da) - to have indigestion
- 속이 기허다 (suk-si-gi-ha-da) - to have difficulty breathing
- 손이 뜯다 (sun-si-gi-ga him-deul-da) - to be dizzy
- 야지하다 (yeol-ja-reop-da) - to have a fever
- 이가 아프다 (i-ga a-peu-da) - to have a toothache
- 코가 막히다 (ko-ga ma-ki-da) - to have nasal congestion
- 콧물이 나다 (kon-mul-i na-da) - to have a runny nose
- 토하다 (to-ha-da) - to vomit
- 피가 나다 (pi-ga na-da) - to bleed
- 피곤하다 (pi-gon-ha-da) - to be tired

Cultural Note

Hospitals in Korea

In the United States, the terms “hospital,” “medical clinic,” and “doctor’s office” indicate the size of the facility and the level of service provided. In Korea, all facilities are called 병원. Reservations are not required, but wait times at general hospitals can be several hours. At other hospitals, the wait can be less than thirty minutes. One diats 119 for emergencies.

Most Korean citizens have medical insurance. In 1976, legislation was passed that required large companies to provide insurance for their employees. More recently, insurance benefits have been made mandatory for public employees and the employees of private schools. For those who do not qualify for these and other types of private insurance, the option is available to join a community health insurance plan. These are accepted at almost all 병원, whether they are general hospitals, dental clinics, midwife clinics, pharmacies, or facilities specializing in traditional Asian medicine.
연습문제 Exercises

1. Please respond to the following:

(1) 어서 오세요. 어떻게 오셨어요? eo-seo o-se-yo. eo-tteo-ke o-syeoss-eo-yo?
(2) 어디가 어떻게 아프세요? eo-di-ga eo-tteo-ke s-pue-se-yo?
(3) 언제부터 아프기 시작하셨어요? en-je-bu-teo a-pue-gi si-ja-syeoss-eo-yo?
(4) 어떤 회사 제품으로 드릴까요? eo-tteon hoe-sa je-pum-eu-ro deu-riil-kka-yo?
(5) 마지막으로 식사를 하신 게 언제지요? ma-ji-mag-eu-ro sik-sa-reul ha-sin ge eon-je-jii-yo?

2. Please translate the following into English:

(1) 감기에 걸린 것 같은데 어질라고 기운이 없어요. 
   gam-gi e geol-lin geot gat-eun-de eo-ji-reop-go gi-un-i eops-eo-yo.
(2) 좋고 많이 나서 기질을 자꾸 해요.
(3) 어제 방세도록 설사하고 도왔어요.
   eo-je bam-sae-do-rok seol-ssa-ha-go to-haeess-eo-yo.
(4) 너무 어지려워서 앉아 있을 수가 없어요.
   ne-o-mu eo-ji-reo-wo-seo anj-a iss-eul su-ga eops-eo-yo.
(5) 검사를 해 봐야 알겠지만 장염에 걸린 것 같아요.
(6) 요즘엔 좋은 약이 많으니까 걱정 많이 안 하셔도 괜찮아요.

3. Please translate the following into Korean:

(1) My gums are frequently swollen, and I often bleed when I brush my teeth.
(2) For sure, please use an anti-peridentitis toothpaste when you brush your teeth.
(3) With these pills, please take two after every meal, three times a day.
(4) Please give me an anti-peridentitis toothpaste, a box of floss, and a bottle of mouthwash.
(5) Please use floss and mouthwash for sure after you brush your teeth.

4. Please write the meaning of the words below and compose sentences using them:

(1) 심심하다 sim-sim-ha-da
(2) 지루하다 ji-ru-ha-da
(3) 피곤하다 pi-gon-ha-da
(4) 싸다 sin-na-da
(5) 무섭다 mu-seop-da

5. Please fill in the blanks with the appropriate words:

[내과, 외과, 소아과, 안과, 치과]

(1) 배가 아프거나 감기에 걸리면 _____에 가야 합니다.
(2) 눈이 아프면 _____에 가야 합니다.
(3) 이가 아물 때는 _____에 가야 합니다.
(4) 아기나 어린이가 아프 때는 _____에 가야 합니다.
(5) 넘어졌을 때 피가 많이 나면 _____에 가야 합니다.
6. Please write a paragraph about your experience in a hospital.

Key to Exercises
Lesson 1

2.
(1) Thank you.
(2) Excuse me.
(3) I am sorry.
(4) Welcome.
(5) Don’t mention it.

3.
(1) 그 동안 어떻게 지내셨습니까? geu-dong-an eo-tteo-ke ji-nae-syeot-seum-ni-kkâ?
(2) 덕분에 잘 지냈습니까. deok-bun-e jal ji-naet-seum-ni-da.
(3) 오래만입니다. o-rae-gan-man-im-ni-da.
(5) 다시 뵈게 되어서 반갑습니다. da-si boep-ge dwae-seo ban-gap-seum-ni-da.

Lesson 2

2.
(1) I come from Korea. I live in Su-won.
(2) I am not Korean. I am Chinese.
(3) You and I are the same age. I am 32 years old, too.
(4) We don’t have a kid yet. There are only two of us, my wife and I.

3.
(2) 저는 미시간에서 태어났습니다. jeo-neun mi-si-gan-e-seo tae-eo-nat-seum-ni-da.

Key to Exercises

(4) 저는 할월 생입니다. jeo-neun chil-wol-saeng-im-ni-da.
(5) 저는 형제가 없습니다. jeo-neun hyeong-je-ga eop-seum-ni-da.

Lesson 3

2.
(1) There is a shopping center inside the apartment complex, so it is very convenient.
(2) I moved last Friday and almost finished putting things in order during the weekend.
(3) That building has had construction these past few days, so it is too crowded.
(4) There is a coffee shop in the basement of the Je-il building.
(5) Please cross the signal light and go straight on your right-hand side.

3.
(1) 핵상 위에 컴퓨터가 있어요. chaek-sang wi-e keom-psy-teeo-ga iss-eo-yo.
(2) 제 가방은 탁자 밑에 있어요. je ga-bang-eun tak-ja mit-e iss-eo-yo.
(3) 점대 앞에 전화기가 있어요. chim-dae yeop-e jeon-hwa-gi-ga iss-eo-yo.
(4) 창문은 소파 뒤에 있어요. chang-mun-eun sso-pa dwi-e iss-eo-yo.
(5) 거실 앞에 문이 있어요. geo-sil ap-e mun-i iss-eo-yo.

Lesson 4

2.
(1) Yesterday was my sister’s birthday and I completely forgot.
(2) It conflicts with the newcomer’s reception.
(3) Tomorrow is the day of my college alumni reunion.
(4) It’s almost time to go home already.
(5) I should stop by a watch repair shop when I go home.
(6) Don’t you think it might be that the battery is worn out?

3.
(1) 천구백구십칠년 쌀월 심육일 chon-gu-baek-gu-sip-chil-lyeon
   chil-wol sim-nyug-il
(2) 오후 열두시 심십분 o-hu yeol-tu-si sam-sip-bun
(3) 천구백육십오년 육월 심십일 cheon-gu-baek-yuk-sip-o-nyeon
   yu-wol sam-sib-il
(4) 오후 세시 심십분 o-hu se-si sa-sib-o-bun
(5) 이천사년 팔월 칠일 i-cheon-sa-nyeon pal-wol chil-il
(6) 오전 일곱시 심오분 o-jeon il-gop-si sib-o-bun
(7) 이천년 시월 이십일 i-cheon-nyeon si-wol i-sip-gu-il
(8) 오전 아홉시 심십분 o-jeon a-hop-si i-sip-bun
(9) 이천육년 심이월 이십일 i-cheon-nyung-nyeon si-i-wol
   i-sib-o-il
(10) 오전 열시 심십분 o-jeon yeol-ssi sa-sip-bun

Lesson 5

2.
(1) Please say to call back to the office as soon as she gets the message.
(2) Everyone knows there is a staff meeting tomorrow at 4:00, right?
(3) I contacted everyone yesterday, but I couldn’t get a hold of one person.
(4) I urgently need to contact him, but I don’t have his phone number.
(5) I am sorry for calling you so late at night.

3.
(1) 수신자 부담으로 전화를 좀 걸고 싶은데요.
   su-sin-ja bu-dam-eu-ro jeon-hwa-reul jon geol-go
   sip-un-de-yo.

Key to Exercises

(2) 좌승합니다. 전화를 잘못 건 것 같아요.
   joo-song-ham-ni-da jeon-hwa-reul jai mot geon geot gat-a-yo.
(3) 자동 응답기에 메모를 남겨 주십시요.
   ja-dong eung-dap-gi-e me-mo-reul nam-gyeo ju-sip-si-o.
(4) 신호는 뻔드에 전화를 안 받아요.
   sin-ho-neun ga-neun-de jeon-hwa-reul an bad-a-yo.
(5) 전화가 고장난 것 같아요.
   jeon-hwa-ga go-jang-nan geot gat-a-yo.

Lesson 6

2.
(1) It is showing unusually high temperatures not only in Korea but
   all around the world these days.
(2) It’s worse in Korea because it’s so humid in the summer.
(3) It’s so hot and humid that I don’t want to go out.
(4) Actually I had a plan to go to see a movie tomorrow with my friend.
(5) It’s a new spy movie and supposed to be really good.

3.
(1) 저는 주일동안 데래방전 보는 것을 좋아하는데 이번 주말에는
   너무 바빴어요.
   jeo-neun ju-mal-ttong-an tel-le-bi-jeon bo-neun geos-cul jo-ah-
   ha-neun de i-beon ju-mal-e-neun neo-mu ba-ppass-eo-yo.
(2) 제 취미는 그림 그리기이고, 제 남동생 취미는 피아노 치기
   입니다.
   je chwi-mi-neun guu-rii-mu guu-ri-gi-i-go, je nam-dong-saeng
   chwi-mi-neun pi-a-no chi-gi-im-ni-da.
(3) 한국의 겨울 날씨는 아주 충격 바람이 많이 봐요.
   han-gug-e geyo-ul nal-ssi-neun a-ju chup-go ba-ram-i man-i
   bum-ni-da.
Lesson 7

2.
(1) This design sells the most these days.
(2) Doesn’t this need to be dry-cleaned?
(3) We got a lot of dress pants that don’t need to be dry-cleaned these days.
(4) The regular price is 100,000 won, but there’s a sale now so it will be discounted 25%.
(5) Elderly people like plain colors less than young people do these days.
(6) I think this dark yellow dress shirt and the striped tie would match well.
(7) A plain-color one that matches well with any clothes would be great.

3.
(1) 안겨요. an-gyeo-yo.
(2) 보여요. bo-yeo-yo.
(3) 맛허요. ma-kee-yo.
(4) 물려어요. nuul-yeoss-eo-yo.
(5) 빼앗어요. ppaet-gyeoss-eo-yo.

4.
(1) 입고 ip-go
(2) 매고 mae-go
(3) 선고 sin-kko
(4) 끼고 kki-go
(5) 쓰고 sseu-go
(6) 빼고 beot-go
(7) 풀고 pul-go
(8) 빼고 beot-go
(9) 빼고 ppae-go
(10) 빼고 beot-go

Key to Exercises

Lesson 8

2.
(1) The time seems to be going by so fast today.
(2) All the foods are relatively good there. The restaurant is clean also.
(3) It’s my treat today. (or I will treat you today.)
(4) I brought a guest with me today, so please be especially nice.
(5) Please give us some cold water and wet towels, too.
(6) That’s why I am a regular customer at this place, you know?

3.
(1) 여기 모두 얼마인가요? yeo-gi mo-du eol-na-jim-ni-kka?
(2) 많이 파세요. man-i pa-se-yo.
(3) 덜분에 잘 먹었습니다. deok-bun-e jal meog-eoss-eum-ni-da.
(5) 각자 잘 되시지요? jang-sa jal doe-si-ji-yo?
(6) 알짝 나오셨네요. il-jjik na-o-syeon-ne-yo.

4.
(1) 책상 위에 컴퓨터가 없어요. chack-sang wi-e keon-pu-teo-ga eops-eo-yo.
(2) 우리 아버지는 선생님이 아니세요. u-ri a-beo-ji-neun seon
saeng-nim-i a-ni-se-yo.
(3) 저는 한국어를 잘 몰라요. jeo-neun han-gug-eo-reul jal mol-la-yo.
(4) 저는 한국음식을 안 좋아해요. jeo-neun han-gug-eun-sig-cul an jo-a-hae-yo.
(5) 제 여자친구는 별로 안 예뻐요. je yeo-ja-chin-gu-neun byeol-lo an ye-ppeo-yo.
Lesson 9

2.
(1) Would you like to look at these magazines while you are waiting?
(2) Your hair is pretty thick so without the layering, it will look stuffy.
(3) Since your hair is so dark, try tinting your hair.
(4) Don’t change the shape of the hair and just trim it a little shorter, please.
(5) I guess my hair grows faster than other people’s.

3.
(1) 태웠어요. tae-woss-eo-yo
(2) 끓어요. kkeul-yeo-yo
(3) 물어요. ul-lyeo-yo
(4) 벗겨요. beot-geo-yo
(5) 입혀요. i-pyeo-yo
(6) 낫쳐 주세요. nat-chwo ju-se-yo
(7) 재워요. jae-wo-yo

4.
(1) 그러서 geu-rae-seo
(2) 그런데 geu-reon-de
(3) 그리고 geu-ri-go
(4) 그런데 geu-reon-de
(5) 그러서 geu-rae-seo
(6) 그러면 geu-teo-myeon
(7) 그렇게만 geu-teo-chi-man

Lesson 10

2.
(1) Don’t you think traffic is a lot smoother during the weekdays rather than the weekends?

Lesson 11

2.
(1) My passport can be used as an ID, right? And I don’t have a stamp.
(2) Please write your name, address, and pin number on this application form.
(3) Please give me everything in checks and only the change in cash.
(4) Express mail will take three days, but it’s a little expensive. Are you in a hurry?
(5) If you send it as air-mail, it will take about a week.
(6) Because of the price increase last week, you will probably need to use 230-won stamps now.

3.
(1) 통장을 하나 만들려고 하는데요. tong-jang-eul ha-na man-deul-lyeo-go ha-neun-de-yo.
(2) 신분증하고 도장 좀 주시겠습니까?
   sin-bun-jeung-ha-go do-jang jom ju-si-get-seum-ni-kka?
(3) 혈금카드도 필요하시지요?
   hyeon-geum-ka-deu-do pil-yo-ha-si-ji-yo?
(4) 오늘 환율이 어떻게 되나요?
   o-neul hwan-nyul-i eo-tteo-ke doe-na-yo?
(5) 수수료 5000(오천)원 공제하고 드렸습니다.
   su-su-ryo o-cheon-won gong-je-ha-go deu-ryeot-seum-ni-da.

(4)
1. to withdraw money
2. to earn money
3. to send money
4. to win money
5. to need money

5.
(1) 이백오십원 i-baeg-o-sib-won
(2) 천만팔천삼백오십원 chil-man-pal-choen-sam-baeg-o-sib-won
(3) 사십육만구천백원
   sa-sim-nyung-man-gu-cheonchil-baeg-won
(4) 백이십오만칠천백원
   baeg-i-sib-o-man-chil-choen-pal-baeg-won
(5) 삼천사백오십만원 sam-choen-sa-baeg-o-sim-man-won

Lesson 12

2.
(1) I feel like I have a cold; I am dizzy and have no energy.
(2) I am cold and sweating, and I am coughing frequently.
(3) I have had diarrhea and was throwing up all night yesterday.
(4) I feel so dizzy that I cannot sit down.
(5) I will see the details after tests, but I think you have enteritis.
(6) Because there are lots of good medicines these days, you don’t need to worry too much.
Appendix 1: A Brief Korean Grammar
1. WORD ORDER

Korean is a predicate-final language. All sentences end with the predicate, i.e. the verb or adjective. All other elements in the sentence, such as the subject or object, appear before the predicate. Korean particles, the equivalent of English prepositions (e.g. from, in, with, or to), always appear after the noun or pronoun to which they’re related. The elements before the predicate can be placed in any order as long as the sentence ends with the predicate, a tendency that has led to Korean being called a “free word order” language.

Consider this English sentence: *Michael eats breakfast at a restaurant in the morning.* Let’s break it down into its component parts:

- Subject: Michael
- Predicate: eats
  - Object: breakfast
  - Preposition: at a restaurant (in the morning)

Now let’s convert this to a Korean structural pattern:

- Subject: + subject marker: Michael
- Predicate: eats
  - Preposition: at a restaurant (in the morning)

So, in Korean, this would be:

마이클이 아침에 식당에서 밥을 먹는다.

(Ma-i-keul-i (a-chim-e) sik-dang-e-seo (bab-eul) meong-neun-da)

Other possibilities include:

식당에서 아침에 마이클이 밥을 먹는다.

(Sik-dang-e-seo (a-chim-e) ma-i-keul-i (bab-eul) meong-neun-da)

As can be seen, the sentence elements can be arranged in any order as long as the sentence ends with the predicate.

2. SPEECH LEVELS

Korean has four speech levels that indicate the speaker’s interpersonal relationship with the hearer. These speech levels are indicated by sentence-final suffixes attached to predicates. These suffixes are illustrated below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Deferential</th>
<th>Statement</th>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Request</th>
<th>Suggestion</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-습/습니까</td>
<td>-습/습니까?</td>
<td>-습/습니까</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-습/습니까</td>
<td>-(s)습시오</td>
<td>-(s)습시오</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polite</td>
<td>-이/이요</td>
<td>-이/이요?</td>
<td>-이/이요</td>
<td>-이/이요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-(a-eo-yo)</td>
<td>-(a-eo-yo)</td>
<td>-(a-eo-yo)</td>
<td>-(a-eo-yo)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intimate</td>
<td>-이/이</td>
<td>-이/이?</td>
<td>-이/이</td>
<td>-이/이</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-(a-eo)</td>
<td>-(a-eo)</td>
<td>-(a-eo)</td>
<td>-(a-eo)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plain</td>
<td>-은/는/ㄴ다</td>
<td>-ㄴ?</td>
<td>-이/아리</td>
<td>-자</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-(eun/eneun/n-da)</td>
<td>-(ni)</td>
<td>-(a-eo-ra)</td>
<td>-(ja)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For example, 먹습니다 (meok-seum-ni-da), 먹어요 (meog-co-yo), 먹어 (meog-co), and 먹는다 (meong-neun-da) all mean [someone] eats, expressed in different speech levels.

The most common level used to an adult is the polite one. While the deferential level is used mostly by male speakers in formal situations such as news reports or public lectures, the polite level is widely used by both males and females in daily conversation.

The intimate level and the plain level are used by an old person when speaking to a younger one, by a child to his or her siblings, or between close friends whose friendship began in childhood or adolescence.
### 3. PRONOUNS

#### Personal Pronouns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plain</th>
<th>Honorific</th>
<th>Humble</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1st person (I, me, myself)</td>
<td>나 / 내</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>지 / 제</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>na / nae</td>
<td></td>
<td>jeo / je</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| 2nd person (you) | 너 | --- | --- |
|                  | neo |     |    |

| 3rd person (his/hers/its) | 이/그/저사람 | 이/그/저분 |
|                           | ilgeu/jeo-sa-ram | ilgeu/jeo-bun |

| (he, she, it, etc.)     | 이/그/저것 (for a thing) | 이/그/저것 (for a thing) |
|                        | ilgeu/jeo-geo | ilgeu/jeo-geot |

The use of personal pronouns is not common in Korean, except for the first person pronoun. With the second and third person, usually either the name or title is used.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plural</th>
<th>Plain</th>
<th>Honorific</th>
<th>Humble</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1st person (we)</td>
<td>우리(들)</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>저희(들)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>u-ri-(deul)</td>
<td></td>
<td>jeo-hui-(deul)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| 2nd person (you all) | 네희(들) | --- | --- |
|                      | neo-hui-(deul) |     |    |

| 3rd person (they) | 이/그/저사람들 | 이/그/저분들 |
|                   | ilgeu/jeo-sa-ram-deul | ilgeu/jeo-bun-deul |

| 이/그/저것들 (for a thing) | 이/그/저것들 (for a thing) |
|                          | ilgeu/jeo-geo-deul | ilgeu/jeo-geot-deul |

Plural nouns in English use a plural suffix, e.g. the “s” in “fields”. In Korean, the plural suffix -다(-ta, -da) is optional and rarely used.

#### Possessive Pronouns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plain</th>
<th>Honorific</th>
<th>Humble</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1st person (my)</td>
<td>내</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>제</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>nae</td>
<td></td>
<td>je</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| 2nd person (your) | 너     | --- | --- |
|                   | ne     |     |    |

| 3rd person (his/her/its) | 이/그/저사람(의) | 이/그/저분(의) |
| (his/her/its)            | ilgeu/jeo-sa-ram-deul-(ui) | ilgeu/jeo-bun-deul-(ui) |

| (he, she, it, etc.)     | 이/그/저것(의) (for a thing) | 이/그/저것(의) (for a thing) |
|                        | ilgeu/jeo-geo-deul-(ui) | ilgeu/jeo-geot-deul-(ui) |
4. DEMONSTRATIVES

For the topic markers, subject markers and object markers, please see the section on particles below.

이 (i) (near speaker)

이건/이건 (topic) 이건 (subj.) 이건 (obj.)

이건/이건 (i-geol) i-geol

이건/이건 (i-geol)

어기 (place) 이쪽 (direction) 이사람 (person) 이분 (person, hon.)

어기 (yeo-gi) i-jok i-sa-ram i-bun

그 (geu) that (near listener)

그건/그건 (topic) 그건 (subj.) 그건 (obj.)

그건/그건 (geu-geol) geu-geol

그건/그건 (geu-geol)

겨기 (place) 그쪽 (direction) 그사람 (person) 그분 (person, hon.)

겨기 (geo-gi) geu-jok geu-sa-ram geu-bun

저기 (joe) that over there (away from both speaker and listener)

저건/저건 (topic) 저건 (subj.) 저건 (obj.)

저건/저건 (joe-geol) joe-geol

저건/저건 (joe-geol)

저기 (place) 저쪽 (direction) 저사람 (person) 저분 (person, hon.)

저기 (joe-gi) joe-fiek joe-sa-ram joe-bun

5. PARTICLES

Particles are words that indicate the context in which one is to understand the noun, phrase, or sentence to which they are attached. They are usually short, often no more than a syllable, and some have functions similar to such English prepositions as in, to, at, and with. Others are used as markers for the subject and object nouns in a sentence. Remember that particles always come after the sentence elements they modify. Occasionally, different particles are used depending on whether the word to which they are attached ends with a consonant or a vowel.

Subject

-이 (used after a consonant) 학생 (hak-saeng)

-이 (i) student (+ subject marker [subj.])

-가 (used after a vowel) 의사 (ui-sa)

-가 (ga) doctor (+ subj.)

-께서 (honofitic) 아버지 (a-beo-ji)

-께서 (-kke-seo) 지 (joe-seo) father (+ subj.)

Object

-을 (used after a consonant) 책 (chak-sang)

-을 (eul) desk (+ object marker [obj.])

-을 (used after a vowel) 의자 (ui-ja)

-을 (eul) chair (+ obj.)

Topic

-은 (used after a consonant) 한국말 (han-gung-sal)

-은 (eun) Korean language (+ topic marker [top.])

-는 (used after a vowel) 한국어 (han-gug-ee)

-는 (nun) Korean language (+ top.)
### Dative (Indirect Object)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-에게</td>
<td>친구에게</td>
<td>to my friend</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(-e-ge)</td>
<td>(chin-gu-e-ge)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-한테</td>
<td>친구한테</td>
<td>to my friend</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(-han-te)</td>
<td>(chin-gu-han-te)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-께</td>
<td>아버지께</td>
<td>to my father</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(-kke)</td>
<td>(a-heo-ji-kke)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Source

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-에게서</td>
<td>친구에게서</td>
<td>from my friend</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(-e-ge-seo)</td>
<td>(chin-gu-e-ge-seo)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-한테서</td>
<td>친구한테서</td>
<td>from my friend</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(-han-te-seo)</td>
<td>(chin-gu-han-te-seo)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Location

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-에</td>
<td>학교에</td>
<td>in school</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(-e)</td>
<td>(hak-gyo-e iss-ee-yo.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(destination)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-에서</td>
<td>학교에서</td>
<td>at school</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(-e-seo)</td>
<td>(hak-gyo-e gae-yyo.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Time

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-에</td>
<td>아침에</td>
<td>in the morning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(-e)</td>
<td>(a-chim-e)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(from... until...)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-부터</td>
<td>아침부터</td>
<td>from morning until evening</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(-bu-teo)</td>
<td>(a-chim-bu-teo)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Purpose

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-으로</td>
<td>친구 만나러</td>
<td>in order to meet my friend</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(-eul-ryo)</td>
<td>(chin-gu man-nar-ryo)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(in order to)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-으로</td>
<td>서울에 가려고</td>
<td>in order to go to Seoul</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(-eul-ryeo-go)</td>
<td>(seo-ul-e gae-ryeo-go)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Miscellaneous

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-으로</td>
<td>비행기로</td>
<td>by means of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(-eul-ryo)</td>
<td>(bi-haeng-gi-ryo)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(transportation)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
6. QUESTION WORDS

누가 (nu-ga) (who, subject)
누구 (nu-gu) (who)
무슨 일을 하세요? (mu-seun il-eul ha-se-yo?) (What kind of work do you do?)
무엇을 좋아하세요? (mu-eos-eul jo-a-ha-se-yo?) (What do you like?)
무엇과 제일 어려우세요? (mu-eos ga-je-Il eo-ryeo-u-se-yo?) (What is the most difficult thing for you?)
어느 나라 사람이세요? (eo-neu na-re sa-ram-i-se-yo?) (Which country are you from?)
어디 사세요? (eo-di sa-se-yo?) (Where do you live?)
어떻게 부산에 어떻게 가요? (eo-teo-ke bu-san-e eo-teo-ke ga-yo?) (How can I get to Pusan?)
어떤 사람을 좋아하세요? (eo-teon sa-ram-eul jo-a-ha-se-yo?) (What kind of people do you like?)

-도 (do) (also)
나도 가고 싶어요. (na-do ga-go sip-co-yo.) (I also want to go.)
-만 (man) (only; just)
클라인 주세요. (kol-la-man ju-se-yo) (Please just give me a Coke.)
-이(나) (i(i)-na) (or something; just)
오늘 집에서 장이나 점례요. (o-neul jib-e-seo jang-i-na jal-lae-yo.) (I'll just stay home and sleep today.)
(as many as; already)
오늘 커피를 세잔이나 마셨어요. (o-neul keo-pi-reul se-jan-i-na ma-seoss-eo-yo.) (I already drank three cups of coffee today.)
-밖에 (bakk-e) (nothing but, only)
다섯 사람밖에 안 봤어요. (da-seot sa-ram-bakk-e an wass-eo-yo.) (Only five people came.)

(-에 always accompanies a negative verb. [Verbs are discussed below in Numbers 6, 7, and 8.])
-에 (e) (per, for)
7. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS

누가 (nu-ga)  
someone/anyone  
There is someone.

누구 (nu-gu)  
someone/anyone  
I am bringing someone.

우순 (mu-seun)  
some kind of  
I smell something.

무엇 (mu-eot)  
something/anything  
I bought something.

어느 (eo-neu)  
one  
One day, all at a sudden, I couldn't hear.

어디 (eo-di)  
somewhere/anywhere  
I want to go somewhere.

어떻게 (eo-teo-ke)  
somehow  
Please do something.

어떤 (eo-teen)  
some  
Somebody came to our house.

 언제한번만이려요? (eon-je han-beon man-nil-kka-yo?)  
Should we meet sometime?

 누구든지 (nu-gu-deun-ji)  
whoever/whomever  
Whoever you ask, they all like Angela.

 웨든지 (mwo-deun-ji)  
whatever, anything  
Whatever the food is, I will eat very well.

 어느 것이든지 (eo-neu geos-i-deun-ji)  
whichever  
I like all Korean food, whichever dish it may be.

 어디든지 (eo-di-deun-ji)  
wherever  
Wherever the destination may be, I want to travel on weekends.

 어떻게든지 (eo-teo-ke-deun-ji)  
No matter what  
No matter what, I want to go abroad once.
8. WORD FORMATION

Noun Formation

To form nouns from a verb, add -길 (-gi) or -는 것 (-neun-geot) after the verb stem.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Noun</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>걷다 (geot-da)</td>
<td>걷기 / 걷는 것 (geot-gi) / (geon-neun geot) walking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>노래하다 (no-rae-ha-da)</td>
<td>노래하기 / 노래하는 것 (no-rae-ha-gi) / (no-rae-ha-neun geot) singing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>소핑가다 (syo-ping-ga-da)</td>
<td>소핑가기 / 소핑가는 것 (syo-ping-ga-gi) / (syo-ping-ga-neun geot) shopping</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>자다 (ja-da)</td>
<td>자기 / 자는 것 (ja-gi) / (ja-neun geot) sleeping</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Verb Formation

To form verbs from a noun, add -다 (-da) or -하다 (-ha-da) to the noun.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>Verb</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>일 (il)</td>
<td>일하다 (il-ha-da) work to work</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>공부 (gong-hu)</td>
<td>공부하다 (gong-bu-ha-da) study to study</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>생각 (saeng-sak)</td>
<td>생각하다 (saeng-ga-ka-da) thinking to think</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>수영 (su-yeong)</td>
<td>수영하다 (su-yeong-ha-da) swimming to swim</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Noun Modifier Formation

A construction consisting of a clause with either -는 or (으)는 before a noun is called a relative clause. It is a type of noun-modifying construction. An example would be [hangul/romanization/English]. The key thing to remember about relative clauses in Korean is that they always precede the noun they modify. Korean differs from English in that the clauses are not accompanied by such relative pronouns as who, that, and which.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Active Verb:</th>
<th>Descriptive:</th>
<th>Adverb:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>읽다 / 가다 ( ilk-da/ga-da) to read, to go</td>
<td>읽다 / 가다 ( ilk-da/ga-da) to be good, to be cheap</td>
<td>읽다 ( ilk-da) to be</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past / Retrospective (Imperfect)</td>
<td>읽다 ( ilk-da) to exist, to not exist</td>
<td>읽다 ( ilk-da) to be</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>외던 / 가던 ( ilk-deon/ga-deon) was reading, was going</td>
<td>외던 ( ilk-deon) was good, was cheap</td>
<td>읽다 ( ilk-da) to be</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present / Ongoing</td>
<td>읽는 / 가는 ( ilk-neun/ga-neun) is reading, is going</td>
<td>읽는 ( ilk-neun) is the</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future / Unrealized</td>
<td>읽을 / 가 ( ilk-eul/ga) will read, will go</td>
<td>읽을 ( ilk-eul) will be</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Adverb Formation

To form an adverb from a descriptive verb, add -게 (-ge) after the descriptive verb's stem.

#### Descriptive Verb

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Jae-mi-it-da</th>
<th>Jae-mi-it-da</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>interesting</td>
<td>interestingly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>늦다</td>
<td>늦게</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(neut-da)</td>
<td>(neut-ge)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>late</td>
<td>lately</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ba-ppeu-da)</td>
<td>(ba-ppeu-ge)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>busy</td>
<td>busily</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>시끄럽다</td>
<td>시끄럽게</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(si-kkeu-reop-da)</td>
<td>(si-kkeu-reop-ge)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loud</td>
<td>loudly</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## 9. TENSES

Korean verbs have three tenses: present, past, and future. The rules for conjugating them into the tenses appear below. Please note that verbs are conjugated by tense only and not by person.

### Present:

verb stem + -아/어요

(-a/co-yo)

지금 한국에 가요.

(ji-geum han-gug-e ga-yo.)

I am leaving for Korea now.
Past:

verb stem + -있/었어요
(-ass/ess-oo-yo)

작년에 한국에 갔어요.
(jang-nyeon-e han-gug-e gass-oo-yo.)
I went to Korea last year.

Future (probability in the future):

verb stem + -(으)ㄹ 거예요
(-eu] kkeo-ye-yo)

내년에 한국에 갈 거예요.
(nae-nyeon-e han-gug-e gal kkeo-ye-yo.)
I will go to Korea next year.

10. NEGATION OF VERBS

Short-form Negation

안-
(an-)
don't

안 먹어요.
(an meog-oo-yo.)
I don't eat.

공부 안 해요.
(gong-bu an hae-yo.)
I don't study.

모.
(mot-)
can't

못 먹어요.
(mot meog-oo-yo.)
I can't eat.

공부 못해요.
(Gong-bu mo-tae-yo.)
I can't study.

Long-form Negation

-지 않다
(-ji anta)

먹지 않아요.
(meok-ji an-a-yo.)
I don't eat.

-지 못하다
(ji mo-ta-da)

먹지 못해요.
(meok-ji mo-tae-yo.)
I can't eat.

-지 않다 (request only)
(-ji mal-da)

먹지 마세요.
(meok-ji ma-se-yo)
Please don't eat it.

Special Negation Words

있다 (it-da) versus 없다 (cop-ta)

있어요.
(iss-oo-yo)
there is . . .

있어요.
(eops-oo-yo)
there is not . . .

이다 (i-da) versus 아니다 (a-ni-da)

이예요.
(i-e-yo)
it is . . .

아니예요.
(a-ni-e-yo)
it is not . . .
11. HONORIFIC EXPRESSIONS

Korean is a language whose honorific patterns are highly systematic. Honorific forms appear in hierarchical address/reference terms and titles, some commonly used nouns and verbs, the pronoun system, particles, and verb suffixes. Sentences in Korean cannot be formed without knowledge of one's social relationships to the listener or to the one referenced in terms of age, kinship, and social status. Honorific forms are used when a social or familial superior, a distant peer, or a stranger must be referred or spoken to with respect.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nouns</th>
<th>Plain</th>
<th>Honorific</th>
<th>Humble</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>age</td>
<td>나이</td>
<td>연세</td>
<td>yeon-se</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>이름</td>
<td>성함</td>
<td>seong-ham</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>birthday</td>
<td>생일</td>
<td>생신</td>
<td>saeng-sin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>word</td>
<td>말</td>
<td>말씀</td>
<td>mal-sscum, mai-ssum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>house</td>
<td>집</td>
<td>앉</td>
<td>daek</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>meal</td>
<td>밥</td>
<td>밥</td>
<td>jin-ji</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>counter</td>
<td>사람/영</td>
<td>분</td>
<td>sa-ram/myeong, bun</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Pronouns**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pronouns</th>
<th>Plain</th>
<th>Honorific</th>
<th>Humble</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>he/she</td>
<td>이/그/저사람</td>
<td>이/그/저분</td>
<td>(이/구/저사람)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>나/본대가</td>
<td>차는/재가</td>
<td>(나/본대가)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>my/our</td>
<td>내</td>
<td>재</td>
<td>(내)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we</td>
<td>우리</td>
<td>저희</td>
<td>(우리)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Verbs**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verbs</th>
<th>Plain</th>
<th>Honorific</th>
<th>Humble</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>see/meet</td>
<td>보다/만나다</td>
<td>보시다/만나시다</td>
<td>볼다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be/exist/stay</td>
<td>있다</td>
<td>계시다</td>
<td>(있다)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>die</td>
<td>죽다</td>
<td>돌아가시다</td>
<td>(죽다)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be well/fine</td>
<td>좋다</td>
<td>안녕하시다</td>
<td>(잘)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sleep</td>
<td>자다</td>
<td>주무시다</td>
<td>(자다)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eat</td>
<td>먹다</td>
<td>도시다/잡수시다</td>
<td>(먹다)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>give</td>
<td>주다</td>
<td>주시다</td>
<td>(주다)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>speak</td>
<td>알하다</td>
<td>알씀하시다</td>
<td>(말하다)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Particles**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Particles</th>
<th>Plain</th>
<th>Honorific</th>
<th>Humble</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>subject</td>
<td>-이/가</td>
<td>-게서</td>
<td>(-이/가)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>topic</td>
<td>-은/는</td>
<td>-께서는</td>
<td>(-은/는)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>goal</td>
<td>-한테/에게</td>
<td>-께</td>
<td>(-한테/에게)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**12. IRREGULAR VERBS**

In Korean, there are verbs that change their final sound before a suffix that begins with a certain sound. These verbs are commonly called irregular and are nine types, as shown below.

**-Irregular Verbs**

Irregular verbs are those whose stem-final - becomes - before a vowel, as in 들어다 (deuteun-da) to listen, which becomes 들어요 (deuto-yeo). Other examples:

- to ask: 들어요 (deuteun-da) → 들어요 (deuto-yeo)
- to walk: 걸어요 (geoteun-da) → 걸어요 (geote-yeo)

**-Irregular Verbs**

Irregular verbs are those whose final - sound becomes  before a vowel, as in 가까다 (ga-kap-da) to be close, which becomes 가까워요 (ga-kap-wo-yo). Other examples:

- to be cold: 써다 (chup-da) → 써어요 (chup-wo-yo)
- to be difficult: 어렵다 (eroep-da) → 어렵어요 (eroep-wo-yo)
- to be easy: 쉬다 (swip-da) → 쉬어요 (swi-wo-yo)
to be heavy: 무겁다 (mu-geop-da) \(\rightarrow\) 무게워요 (mu-geo-wo-yo)

to be hot: 닦다 (deop-da) \(\rightarrow\) 더워요 (deo-wo-yo)

\(-\)-Irregular Verbs
\(-\)-irregular verbs are those whose final \(-\) is deleted before a vowel, such as
것负面影响 (ji- neun-da) \(\rightarrow\) 지어요 (ji-eo-yo) “to build,” 뜨는다 (but-neun-da) \(\rightarrow\) 부어요 (bu-eo-yo) “to pour,” 뜨어요 (jeot-neun-da) \(\rightarrow\) 지어요 (jeo-eo-yo) “to stir,” and 잇는다 (it-neun-da) \(\rightarrow\) 이어요 (i-eo-yo) “to connect.”

\(\equiv\)-Irregular Verbs
\(\equiv\)-irregular verbs are those whose final \(\equiv\) is deleted before another vowel.

물 빼리다 (sset-da) \(\rightarrow\) 서요 (sseo-yo) “to write,” 바쁘다 (ba-pee-da) \(\rightarrow\) 바쁘요 (ba-ppa-yo) “to be busy,” 크다 (keu-da) \(\rightarrow\) 크요 (keo-yo) “to be big,” 예쁘다 (ye-pee-da) \(\rightarrow\) 예쁘요 (ye-pee-yo) “to be pretty,” 나쁘다 (na-pee-da) \(\rightarrow\) 나쁘요 (na-ppa-yo) “to be bad,” and 아프다 (a-pee-da) \(\rightarrow\) 아프요 (a-pa-yo) “to be sick.”

\(\equiv\)-Irregular Verbs
\(\equiv\)-irregular verbs are those whose stem-final \(\equiv\) is deleted before the consonants \(-\), \(\equiv\), or \(\equiv\), such as 알아요 (al-a-yo) \(\rightarrow\) 아세요 (a-se-yo) “to know,” 놀아요 (nol-a-yo) \(\rightarrow\) 놀니다 (nol-ni-da) “to play,” and 돌아요 (dol-a-yo) \(\rightarrow\) 돌아와 (do-nya-ka) “to turn.” All \(\equiv\) final verbs follow this pattern.

\(\equiv\)-Irregular Verbs
\(\equiv\)-irregular verbs are those whose final \(\equiv\) becomes \(\equiv\) before a suffix beginning with \(-\) or \(-\), as in 부르다 (bu-reu-da) \(\rightarrow\) 불러요 (bul-leo-yo) “to call,” 모르다 (mo-reu-da) \(\rightarrow\) 몰라요 (mol-la-yo) “to not know,” and 빠르다 (pa-reu-da) \(\rightarrow\) 빨려요 (ppal-la-yo) “to be fast.”

\(\equiv\)-Irregular Verbs
\(\equiv\)-irregular verbs are those that undergo \(\equiv\) insertion before a suffix beginning with \(-\) or \(-\), such as 빛나 (pu-reu-da) “to be blue” \(\rightarrow\) 빛나 (pu-reu-eo-seo) “since it is blue.” 이르다 (i-reu-da) and 빠르다 (nu-reu-da) also follow this pattern.

\(\equiv\)-Irregular Verbs
\(\equiv\)-irregular verbs are those whose final \(\equiv\) is deleted before a suffix beginning with \(-\) or \(-\), such as 하다 (ha-da) “to do” \(\rightarrow\) 하세요 (hae-seo) “because someone does something.” All verbs with \(\equiv\) such as 좋아하다 (jo-a-ha-da), 싶어하다 (sil-eo-ha-da), 어항하다 (yeo- haeng-ha-da), and 수영하다 (su-yeong-ha-da) follow this pattern.

\(\equiv\)-Irregular Verbs
\(\equiv\)-irregular verbs are those whose final \(\equiv\) is deleted before a nasal consonant (\(-\), \(\equiv\), or \(\equiv\)) and a vowel. They may undergo further phonological change with the following vowel, such as 빨간다 (ppal-ga-ta) “to be red” \(\rightarrow\) 빨간 (ppal-gan “red”) 하하다 (ha-ya-ta) “to be white” \(\rightarrow\) 하.Names (ha-yani-kka) “because it is white,” and 파랗다 (pa-ra-ta) “to be blue” \(\rightarrow\) 파라 면 (pa-ra-myen) “if it is blue.” The verbs 노랗다 (no-ra-na), 까맣다 (kka- ma-ta), 어긋다 (i-reo-ta), 그리고 (geu-reo-ta), 저렇다 (jeo-reo-ta), and 어 둠다 (eo-teo-ta) also follow this pattern.

13. PASSIVE VERBS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Active</th>
<th>Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>보다</td>
<td>보이다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(bo-da)</td>
<td>(bo-i-da)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to see</td>
<td>to be seen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(sset-da)</td>
<td>(sset-i-da)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to use</td>
<td>to be used</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(dat-da)</td>
<td>(da-chi-da)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to close</td>
<td>to be closed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>저기 신흥동이 보여요.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(jeo-gi sin-ho-deung-i bo-yeo-yo.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I see the traffic light over there.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이 악기 길기에 잘 쓰여요.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(i-yag-i gam-gi-e jal sseu-yeo-yo.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>This medicine is often used for colds.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>바람에 문이 닫혔어요.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ba-ram-e mun-i da-chyeoss-ee-wo-yo.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The door was closed by the wind.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
to block  

The street is blocked due to many cars.

to catch  
The thief was caught by the policeman.

to bite  
The mailman was bitten by a dog.

to hear  
Music is heard by me.

to sell  
Houses are sold quickly these days.

to take away  
My apple was taken away by the dog.
Appendix I: A Brief Korean Grammar

15. CONNECTIVES

Noun Connectives

- 왜문에
  (ttae-mun-e)  
  because of
  차 사고 때문에 길이 막혔어요.
  (cha sa-go ttae-mun-e gil-i ma-kyeoss-eyo.)
  There's traffic because of the accident.

- 만에
  (-man-e)
  대학교 때 친구들 5년만에 우연히 만났어요.
  (dae-hak-gyo ttae chin-gu-reul o-nyeon-man-e u-yeon-li man-nass-eyo.)
  I ran into my college friend, whom I had not seen in five years.
-만 큼
(-man-keum)

as much as

동생이 형안층 키가 커요.
(dong-saeng-i hyeong-man-keum ki-ga keo-yo.)

The younger sibling is as tall as the older brother.

-말고
(-mal-go)

육계장 말고 불고기를 드세요.
(yuk-gae-jang mal-go bul-go-gi-reul deu-se-yo.)

Eat bulgogi instead of yuk-gae-jang.

not [X]; instead

-고 (used after a consonant)
(-gwa)

with, and

I bought a desk and a chair.

-와 (used after a vowel)
(-wa)

with, and

I bought a chair and a desk.

-이나 (used after a consonant)
(-i-na)

신문이나 책을 읽어요.
(sin-mun-i-na chaeg-eul ilg-eo-yo.)

I read a newspaper or a book.

-나 (used after a vowel)
(-na)

or

커피나 차를 마셔요.
(keo-pi-na cha-reul ma-syeo-yo.)

I drink a coffee or a tea.

-이랑 (used after a consonant)
(-i-rang)

with, and (colloquial)

I bought a desk and a chair.

-랑 (used after a vowel)
(-na)

with, and (colloquial)

I listen to music with my friend.

-하고
(-ha-go)

책상하고 의자를 삐어요.
(chaeck-sang-ha-go ui-ja-reul sass-eo-yo.)

with, and (colloquial)

I bought a desk and a chair.

Clausal Connectives

-거나
(-geo-na)

in order that; to

주말에 영화를 보거나 소평을 해요.
(ju-mal-e yeong-hwa-reul bo-geo-na so-ping-eul hae-yo.)

I usually watch a movie or go shopping on weekends.

-게
(-ge)

Can I borrow your camera to take some pictures?

사진 좀 채게 사진기 좀 빌려 주세요.
(sa jin jom jik-ge sa-jin gi jom bil-lyeo ju-se-yo.)

아파트가 조용하고 깨끗해요.
(a-pa-teu-ga jo-yong-ha-go kkae-kkue-tae-yo.)

The apartment is quiet and clean.

-고 나서
(-go na-seo)

after

점심 먹고 나서 공원에 갈어요.
(jeom-sim meok-go na-seo gong-won-e gass-eo-yo.)

We went to a park after we ate lunch.

-기 때문에
(-gi ttae-mun-e)

because

날씨가 나쁘기 때문에 밖에 안 나갔어요.
(nal-ssi-ga na-peu-gi ttae-mun-e bakk-e an na-gass-eo-yo.)

We didn't go outside because the weather was bad.
Appendix 1: A Brief Korean Grammar

-다가
(-da-ga)
while doing something

-아/어 가지고
(-a/eo ga-ji-go)
带有

1) because

-아/어 가지고
(-a/eo ga-ji-go)

2) by doing

-아/어서
(-a/eo-seo)
since

-있/있었다가
(-at/-eot-da-ga)
speaker’s past experience

-있/있었다니
(-at/-eot-deo-ni)
speaker’s past experience

-기 위해서
(-gi wi-hae-seo)
in order to

I came to Korea to learn Korean.

-기 전에
(-gi jeon-e)
before

I went to the park before lunch.

-느라고
(-neu-ra-go)
as a result of ... ing; because of

Because of the Internet, I did not watch TV.

・는 길에
(-neun gil-e)
on one’s way

On my way to the post office, I stopped by the market.

・는 동안
(-neun dong-an)
during; while

While I do laundry I read the newspaper.

・는 바람에
(-neun ba-ram-e)
as a result of; because

Because I fell, I hurt myself.

・데(에)
(-neun-de-[e])
in for . . . . ing

What do you need in order to make kimchi-jit-gae [Korean dish]?

・위다가 넘어졌어요.
(ttwi-da-ga neom-eo-jeoss-eo-yo.)
I fell while I was running.

・정장가 작아가지고 너무 불편해요.
(naeng-jang-go ga jag-a ga-ji-go neo-mu bul-pyoon-hae-yo.)
Because the refrigerator is so small, it is inconvenient.

・한국어 배워가지고 한국에서 일할 거예요.
(han-gug-eo-reul bae-wo ga-ji-go han-gug-e-seo il-hal kkeo-yeo-yo.)
By learning Korean, I will be able to work in Korea.

・아파트가 멀어서 버스 타고 와요.
(a-pa-teu-ga meol-eo-seo beo-seu ta-go wa-yo.)
I take the bus since the apartment is far away.

・자하칠 탔다가 사람이 많아서 혼났어요.
(ji-ha-cheol-eul tat-da-ga sa-ram-i man-a-seo hon-nass-eo-yo.)
I had a hard time because there were so many people in the subway.

・버스를 타더니 사람이 너무 많았어요.
(beo-seu-reul tat-deo-ni sa-ram-i neo-mu man-ass-eo-yo.)
There were many people in the bus when I rode it.
BEGINNER'S KOREAN

- (으)나가  
  
  1) because; since
  
  시간 없으니까 빠르게 달려요.  
  (ji-gum si-gan-i eops-eu-ni-kka taek- 
  si ta-se-to.)
  
  Take a taxi because there isn't enough 
  time.

- (으)니까  
  
  전화 하니까 친구가 집에 없었어요.  
  (jeon-hwa ha-ni-kka chin-gu-ga jib-e 
  eops-eoss-eo-yo.)
  
  I called my friend but he/she was not 
  home.

- (으)려  
  
  옷을 사려 백화점에 가요.  
  (oe-eul sa-reo ba-kwa-jeom-e ga-yo.)
  
  in order to
  I am going to the mall to buy clothes.

- (으)려고  
  
  여행 가려고 준비했어요.  
  (yeo-haeng ga-ryeo-go jun-bi-haess-
  eo-yo.)
  
  intending to
  I prepared to take a trip.

- (으)려다가  
  
  원가 잘못려다가 그만뒀어요.  
  (mwon-ga mal-ha-ryeo-da-ga geu-man-
  dwoss-eo-yo.)
  
  about to do, but
  I was going to say something but I 
  stopped.

- (으)려면  
  
  편지 부치려면 우체국에 가세요.  
  (pyeon-ji bu-chi-ryeo-myeon u-che-
  gug-e ga-se-yo.)
  
  if one intends to
  If you want to mail your letter go to 
  the post office.

-(으)면  
  
  도이 많으면 뭐 할 거예요?  
  (don-i man-eu-myeon mwo hal kkeo-
  ye-yo?)
  
  if
  If you had a lot of money, what would 
  you do?

- (으)면 . . . -(으)면 수록
  
  ([-eu]-myeon . . . eul-su-rok)
  
  the more . . . the more . . .
  The more you see of this movie, the 
  more you will like it.

- (으)면서  
  
  (
  [-eu]-myeon-seo)
  
  1) while  
  While I eat breakfast I read the 
  newspaper.

- (으)면서  
  
  ([-eu]-myeon-seo)
  
  2) even though  
  He/she is driving an expensive car even 
  though he/she does not have money.

- 은/는/다음에  
  
  (-eun hu/da-eum-e)
  
  after  
  I went to the park after I had lunch.

- 은/는/물지  
  
  (-eun)/(-neun)/(-eul-ji)
  
  indirect questions
  I am not sure if these shoes will fit my 
  younger brother/sister.

- 은/는테  
  
  (-eun)/(-neun-de)
  
  but  
  The apartment is quiet but not clean.
- 에 놀래도
-(-eun)/(=neun-de-do)
  (eum-sig-eul man-i meog-eon-neun-de-do a-jik-do bae-ga go-pa-yo.)
  Although I ate a lot I am still hungry.

-despite; although

-을 때
-(-eul ttae)
  (sin-gan iss-eul ttae tel-le-bi-jeon-eul bwa-yo.)
  Watch TV when you have time.

-을 까봐
-(-eul-kka-bwa)
  (han-guk nal-ssi-ga neo-mu chu-ul-kka-bwa geok-geong-i-e-yo.)
  I am afraid the weather in Korea is too cold.

-for fear that; worry that

-을 만큼
-(-eul man-keum)
  (eum-sig-eun meog-eul man-keum-man ga-ji-go o-se-yo.)
  Please bring only as much food as you can finish.

-to the extent/as much as

-을 테니까
-(-eul-te-ni-kka)
  (nae-il gal te-ni-kka mas-in-neun eum-sik man-i jun-bi-ha-se-yo.)
  I will be there tomorrow, so please prepare enough food.

-because one will...; so

-아(가) 아니라
-(-i/-ga a-ni-ra)
  (hwa-ga gan ge a-ni-ra a-peun geoyeo-yo.)
  I am not angry but sick.

-it is not... but...

-이라면
-(-i-ra-myeon)
  If it is...

-이러서
-(-i-ra-seo)
  because; since

-지마자
-(-ja-na-ja)
  as soon as

-지만
-(-ji-man)
  but

-아무...(이)나
(a-mu... [-i]-na)
  any

아무...(이)나
(a-mu... [-i]-na)
  any

아무리...-아/아도
(a-mu-ri...-a/-eo-do)
  no matter how

내가 만일 부자라면 좋은 차를 사겠다.
(nae-ga man-il bu-ja-ra-myeon jo-eun cha-reul sa-get-da.)
If I were rich I would buy a good car.

오늘은 일요일이라서 학교에 안 가요.
(o-neul-eun il-yo-il-1-ra-seo hak-gyo-e
an ga-yo.)
I am not going to school today since it is Sunday.

아침에 일어나자마자 화장실에 가요.
(a-chim-e il-eo-na-ja-ma-ja hwa-jang-sil-e ga-yo.)
I go to the bathroom as soon as I get up in the morning.

아파트가 조용하지만 안 깨끗해요.
(a-pa-teu-ga jo-yong-ha-ji-man an
kkae-kkue-tae-yo.)
The apartment is quiet but not clean.

저는 아무 음식이나 다 잘 먹어요.
(je-Neo-neun a-mu eum-sig-i-na da jal
meog-eo-yo.)
I can eat any kind of food.

아무리 가다라도 택시가 안 와요.
(a-mu-ri gia-da-ra-do taek-si-ga an
wa-yo.)
No matter how long I wait for the taxi, it's not coming.
16. SENTENCE ENDINGS & HELPING VERBS

- 거든요
  (-geo-deun-yo)
  you see, because . . .
  You see, I got my visa last week.

- 게 되다
  (-ge doe-da)
a change of events
  한국을 좋아하게 됐어요.
  (han-gug-eul jo-a-ge dwaess-eo-yo.)
  I came to like Korea.

- 게 하다
  (-ge ha-da)
make someone/something
  (a-i-deul-i bang-e mot deul-eo-o-ge hae ju-se-yo.)
  Please make the children stay out of the room.

- 계요
  (-ge-yo)
intend to
  (ji-geum cheong-sa-ge-ye-yo.)
  I am going to clean now.

- 것습니까
  (-get-seum-ni-da)
announcement
I will tell you today's weather.

- 고 싶다/ 싶어하다
  (-go sip-da/sip-eo-ha-da)
want to
  (gas-bi-reul meok-go sip-eo-yo.)
  I want to eat galbi [Korean dish].

- 고 있다/ 게시다
  (-go it-da)/(-gye-si-da)
progressive
  (ji-geum bap meok-go iss-eo-yo.)
  She is eating right now.
- 것도 하다
(-gi-do ha-da)
they also did
(si-gan iss-eo-myeon ga-kkeum bol-ling-eul chi-gi-do hae-yo.)
I sometimes go bowling when I have time, as they also did.

- 기로 하다
(-gi-ro ha-da)
decide plan to
(yeo-reum-e han-gug-e ga-gi-ro haess-eo-yo.)
We/I plan to go Korea this summer.

- 내요
(-nyae-yo)
indirect speech (question)
(dong-mul-won-e ga-nyae-yo.)
Someone asked if I am going to the zoo.

- 내요
(-ne-yo)
surprise admiration sympathy
(mi-gug-e-seo o-rae sal-an-ne-yo.)
My goodness, you lived in America for a long time.

- 는 길이다
(-neun gil-i-da)
be on one's way
(ji-guem u-che-gug-e ga-neun gil-i-e-yo.)
I am on my way to the post office.

- 는 중이다
(-neun jung-i-da)
in the process of
(ji-guem cheong-so-ha-neun jung-i-e-yo.)
I am in the middle of cleaning up.

- 다/라면서요?
(-da/(-ra-myeon-seo-yo?)
confirming information
(han-gug-e gan-da-myeon-seo-yo?)
I heard you are going to Korea.

- 대요/(-이)래요
(-dae-yo/(-i)-rae-yo)
indirect speech (statement)
(dong-mul-won-e gan-lae-yo.)
I heard s/he is going to the zoo.

begin to
I began to learn Korean.
(han-gug-eo-reul bae-u-gi si-ga-kaess-eo-yo.)

I don't want to
I don't want to ride the bus.
(beo-seu ta-gi sil-eo-yo.)

버스 타기 싫어요.
It is inconvenient to ride the bus.
(bo-seo ta-gi ga bul-pyeon-hae-yo.)

버스 타기 쉬워요.
It is easy to ride the bus.
(bo-seo ta-gi ga swi-wo-yo.)

버스 타기 쉬워요.
It is easy to ride the bus.
(bo-seo ta-gi ga eo-ryeo-wo-yo.)

버스 타기 쉬워요.
It is easy to ride the bus.
(bo-seo ta-gi ga peyon-hae-yo)

버스 타기 쉬워요.
It is easy to ride the bus.
(bo-seo ta-gi ga peyon-hae-yo)

버스 타기 쉬워요.
It is easy to ride the bus.
(bo-seo ta-gi ga swi-wo-yo.)

버스 타기 쉬워요.
It is easy to ride the bus.
(bo-seo ta-gi ga peyon-hae-yo)

버스 타기 쉬워요.
It is easy to ride the bus.
(bo-seo ta-gi ga swi-wo-yo.)

버스 타기 쉬워요.
It is easy to ride the bus.
(bo-seo ta-gi ga peyon-hae-yo)

버스 타기 쉬워요.
It is easy to ride the bus.
(bo-seo ta-gi ga peyon-hae-yo)

버스 타기 쉬워요.
It is easy to ride the bus.
(bo-seo ta-gi ga peyon-hae-yo)
-더라고(요)
(-deo-ra-go-yo)
speaker's experience
Michael Jordan plays basketball very well, in my experience.

-언데요
(-deon-de-yo)
speaker's experience
The food at the hotel restaurant was delicious, in my experience.

-래요
(-rae-yo)
indirect speech (request)
Somebody told me to go to the zoo.

-만...으로 되다
(-man...-eu-myeon doe-da)
all one needs is...
All I need to buy is an airplane ticket.

-아/어 버리다
(-a/(-eo beo-ri-da)
to get done/finish
My younger brother/sister finished the leftover spaghetti.

-아/어 보다
(-a/(-eo bo-da)
try doing
Have you tried kimchi [Korean dish]?

-아/어 보이다
(-a/(-eo bo-i-da)
someone/something looks
The cake looks delicious.
여머니가 케이크를 아주 좋아해요.
(eco-meo-ni-ga ke-i-keu-reul a-ju jo-a-ha-se-yo.)
My mother really likes cake.

앞으로 한국에서 살았으면 해요.
(a-peu-ro han-gug-e-seo sal-ass-eu-myoeon hae-yo.)
I wish to live in Korea in the future.

피곤해서 잊으면 좋겠어요.
(pi-gon-hae-seo jass-eu-myoeon joss-eo-yo.)
I am tired. I want to sleep.

너무 피곤해서 자려고 해요.
(neo-mu pi-gon-hae-seo ja-ryo-go hae-yo.)
I am so tired. I am going to sleep.

아니오, 먹으면 안 태요.
(a-ni-o meog-ea-myoeon an dwae-yo.)
No, please don’t eat.

내 잘못 때문에 이가 아닌 거예요.
(in-mom ttie-mun-e i-ga a-peun geo-ye-yo.)
My teeth hurt a lot because of the chewing gum.

미국 사람이 줄 않았어요.
(mi-guk-sa-ram-in-jul al-ass-eo-yo.)
I thought you were American.

친구가 내 말을 못 듣는 적이어요.
(chin-gu-ga nae mal-eul mot deul-eul cheo-ssaess-eo-yo.)
My friend pretended not to listen.

우리 부모님은 건강하신 편이에요.
(u-ri bu-mo-nim-eun geon-gang-ha-siin pyeon-e-yo.)
My parents are relatively healthy.

여제 비가 온 것 같아요.
(oe-je bi-ga on-geot gat-a-yo.)
It looks like it rained yesterday.

지금 비가 오는 것 같아요.
(ji-gum bi-ga o-neun-geot gat-a-yo.)
It looks like it’s raining now.

내일 비가 올 것 같아요.
(nae-il bi-ga ol-kkeot gat-a-yo.)
It looks like it’s going to rain tomorrow.

가본이 좋은 모양이에요.
(gi-bun-i jo-eun mo-yang-e-yo.)
You appear to be in a good mood.

한국음식이 이렇게 맛있는 줄 몰랐어요.
(han-gug-eum-sig-i i-reo-ke mas-in-neun jul mol-las-eo-yo.)
I didn’t know that Korean food was so delicious.

음식이 아직 많은 줄 알았어요.
(eum-sig-i a-jik man-eun jul al-ass-eo-yo.)
I thought there was plenty of food left.

마이클씨 지금 집에 없는대요.
(ma-i-keul-ssi ji-geum jib-e oom-neun-de-yo.)
Michael is not home right now.
-은/는지...되다
(-eun)/(-neun-jì... doe-da)

한국에 오지 일 년 됐어요.
(han-gug-e on-ji il-lyeon dwaess-eeo-yo.)

It has been [TIME] since
It has been one year since I came to Korea.

-은/는지 모르다
(-eun)/(-neun-jì mo-reu-da)
don't know that...

우체국이 어디 있는지 물라요.
(u-che-gug-i eo-di in-neun-jì mol-la-yo.)

I don't know where the post office is.

-은/는지 알다
(-eun)/(-neun-jì al-da)
know that...

우체국이 어디 있는지 아세요?
(u-che-gug-i eo-di in-neun-jì a-se-yo?)

Do you know where the post office is?

-은/는가/나보다
(-eun-ga)/(-neun-ga)/(na-bo-da)
it seems that...I guess

오늘 기분이 좋을 것 같아요.
(o-neul gi-bun-i jo-eun-ga-bwa-yo.)

I guess you are in a good mood today.

-은/는요?
(-eun)/(-neun-yo)
what about...?

저는 집이 좀 멀어요. 마이클씨는 요?
(jeo-neun jib-i jom meol-eeo-yo. ma-i-
keul-sii-neun-yo.)

My house is pretty far away. What about yours, Michael?

-은/는/gallery
(-eul ppeon-ha-da)
amost, nearly

지갑을 잃어버릴 뻔했어요.
(ji-gab-eul il-eeo-beol ppeon-haeess-
co-yo.)

I almost lost my wallet.

-은/는이 수 있다/없다
(-eul ssu it-da)/(-eop-da)
potential

내일 갈 수 없어요.
(nae-il gil ssu eops-eeo-yo.)

I cannot go tomorrow.

-은/는에 줄 모르다
(-eul juul mo-reu-da)
not know how to

테니스를 줄 모르요.
(te-ni-seu chil juul mol-la-yo.)

I don't know how to play tennis.

-(으)ㄹ 줄 알다
(-eul juul al-da)
know how to

-(으)ㄹ 걸 그랬다
(-eul kkeol geu-raet-da)
regret for a past action

-(으)ㄹ 계요
(-eul-kke-yo)
willingness

-(으)ㄹ 까 생각하다
(-eul-kka saeng-ga-ka-da)
think about

-(으)ㄹ 까 하다
(-eul-kka ha-da)
thinking of...ing

-(으)ㄹ 까요?
(-eul-kka-yo)
1) Shall I...?

-(으)ㄹ 까요?
(-eul-kka-yo)
2) Do you think...??
Appendix 1: A Brief Korean Grammar

17. INDIRECT QUOTATION

Standard Form (Colloquial Form)

Statement:
- 는/-ㄴ다고 해요 (-는/-ㄴ대요)
(-neun/-n-da-go hae-yo [-neun/-n-dae-yo])

발을 먹는다고 해요. / 발을 먹는대요.
(bab-eul meong-neun-da-go hae-yo.) / (bab-eul meong-neun-dae-yo.)
Someone said (he/she) is eating.

-라고 해요 (-래요)
(-ra-go hae-yo [-rae-yo])

의사라고 해요. / 의사래요.
(ui-sa-ra-go hae-yo.) / (ui-sa-rae-yo.)
Someone said (he/she) is a doctor.

Question:
-나고 해요 (-내요)
(-nya-go-hae-yo [nyaee-yo])

발을 먹나고 해요. / 발을 먹내요.
(bab-eul meong-nya-go hae-yo.) / (bab-eul meong-nyaee-yo.)
Someone asked if (he/she) is eating.

Proposal:
-가고 해요 (-재요)
(-ja-go hae-yo [-jae-yo])

발을 먹자고 해요. / 발을 먹자요.
(bab-eul meok-ja-go hae-yo.) / (bab-eul meok-jae-yo.)
Someone said let's eat.
Request:
(으)라고 해요 / (으)래요
([eu]-ra-go haec-yo)/([eu]-rae-yo)

밥을 먹으라고 해요. / 밥을 먹으래요.
(bab-eui meog-eu-ra-go haec-yo.) / (bab-eul meog-eu-rae-yo.)
Someone told me to eat.

Appendix 2:
Korean-English Vocabulary
가게 ga-ge  
가격 ga-gyeok  
가깝다 ga-kkap-da  
가는 머리 ga-neun meo-ri  
가다 ga-da  
가루약 ga-ru-yak  
가수 ga-su  
가슴 ga-seum  
가운데 ga-un-de  
가을 ga-eul  
가족 ga-jok  
가지고 오다 ga-ji-go o-da  
가지고 다다 ga-ji-go ta-da  
가자다 ga-ja-da  
관혼사 gan-ho-sa  
관호원 gan-ho-won  
갈색 gal-seok  
갈아타는 곳 gal-a-ta-neun got  
갈아타다 gal-a-ta-da  
갑기 gam-gi  
갑기에 걸리다 gam-gi-e geol-li-da  
갑사하다 gam-sa-ha-da  
갑다 드리다 gat-da deu-ri-da  
갑다 주다 gat-da ju-da  
갈다 gat-da  
같이 ge-chi  
게 gae  
거기 geo-gi  
가스통은 geo-seu-reum-tton  
귀의 geo-ui  
집중하다 geok-jeong-ha-da  
건너다 geon-neo-da  
store, shop,  
convenient store  
price  
to be close  
thin hair  
to go  
powdered medicine  
singer  
chest/breast  
middle  
fall, autumn  
family, family members  
(formal)  
to bring something  
to ride having something  
to have  
nurse  
nurse  
light brown  
subway transfer place  
to transfer  
cold  
to have a cold  
to thank  
to bring or take something (hon.)  
to bring or take something  
to be same  
together  
items  
there  
change  
almost  
to worry  
to cross (a street)
공항 gong-hang
과 gwa
고복 gwa-mok
고장남 gwa-jang-nim
관산다 gwaen-chan-ta
관첩야 보이다 gwaen-chan-a bo-i-da
교수 gyo-su
교육학 gyo-yuk-hak
교환해 드리다 gyo-hwan-hae deu-ri-da
구 gu
구경하다 gū-gyeong-ha-da
구급차 gu-geup-chā
구름이 까다 gu-reum-i kki-da
구월 gu-wol
국 국 guk
국내선 gung-nae-seon
국제 gung-mul
국제선 guk-je-seon
군인 gun-in
금은 머리 gulg-eun meo-ri
금은 피부 gulg-eun pa-mu
권 gwon
권투를 하다 gwon-tu-reul ha-da
귀 gwi
그 geu
그 동안 geu-dong-an
그 쪽 geu jjak
그저로 geu-geol-lo
그냥 geu-nyang
그대로 geu-rae-do

그럼 geu-reom
그럼요 geu-reom-yo
그렇게 geu-reo-ke
그럼구나 geu-reo-ku-na
그렇다 geu-reo-ta
그렇지만 geu-reo-chi-man
그리고 geu-ri-go
그림을 그리다 geu-rim-eul geu-ri-da
그리 해 geu-jeo-kke

그게 geu-je

근무하다 geun-mu-ha-da

근처 geun-chae

금년 geum-nyeon
금방 geum-bang
금요일 geum-yo-il
금하다 geu-pa-da
금희 geu-pi
기다리다 gi-da-ri-da
기쁘다 gi-ppeu-da
기사 gi-sa
기운이 높다 gi-on-i nat-da
기운이 높다 gi-on-i nop-da
기운이 없다 gi-un-i cop-da
기운이 없다 gi-un-i cop-da
기자 gi-ja
기차 gi-cha
기침을 한다 gi-chim-eul ha-da
기타 gi-ta-reul chi-da
긴 머리 gin meo-ri
길 gil
길다 gil-da
길이 gil-i
짐치 gim-chi
까만 kka-man

then
of course
like that
that's right
to be so
but
and
to draw a picture
day before
yesterday
day before
yesterday
to work at (company name)
near, nearby
this year
soon
Friday
to be hurry
in a hurry
to wait
to be happy
driver
the temperature is low
the temperature is high
to be lacking in
energy
to have no energy
journalist
train
to cough
to play guitar
long hair
street, road
to be long
length
kimchi
black
black color
to be black
to have a haircut
completely
to be clean
to wake
to wake someone up
for sure
to wear (a pin)
flower pattern
flower shop
to untie, to loose
to be humid, sticky,
muggy
to boil
to boil something
to wear (a ring, gloves, etc.)

l

나나
나가는 곳 na-ga-neun got
나가다 na-ga-da
나오다 na-o-da
나이 na-i
나이가 많다 na-i-ga man-ta
나이드신 분들 na-i-dou-sin bun-deul
나중에 na-jung-e
나타나다 na-ta-na-da
나흘 na-heul
낚시를 가다/하다 nak-si-reul ga-da/had-da
날 nal
날씨 nal-ssi
날씨가 나쁘다 nal-ssi-ga na-ppeu-da
날씨가 좋다 nal-ssi-ga jo-ta
날다 nalk-ds
날가다 nam-gi-da
날동생 nam-dong-saeng
날들 nam-deul
날방 nam-bang

1, me
exit
to go out
to come out
age
to be old (person)
old people
later
to appear
4 days
to go fishing
day, date
weather, climate
the weather is bad
d the weather is good
to be old (object)
to leave
younger brother
other people
tennis/golf shirt

남자 nam-ja
남편 nam-yeon
남다 nat-da
남 nat
남다 nat-da
남주 남-chu-da
내 nae
내가 nae-kkwa
내년 nae-nyeon
내려가다 nae-ryeo-ga-da
내려오다 nae-ryeo-o-da
내일 nae-il
내후년 nha-hu-nyeon

냉면 naeng-myeon
냉수 naeng-su
냉커피 naeng-keo-pi
너무 nyo-eu
너나 neom-ta
너나 nyo-ta
너나 주다 neo-eo ju-da

네 ne
네가 nek-ta-i
넷 net
년 nyeon
노란 no-ran
노란색 no-ran-saek
노래 no-ra-ta
노래를 부르다 no-rae-reul bu-reu-da
노래방에 가다 no-rae-bang-e ga-da

도래하다 no-rae-ha-da
노인음 no-in-yong
놀아주다 nol-a-ju-da
놀구름하다 nong-gu-reul ha-da
놀다 nop-da
누가 nu-ga

man
husband
to be better
day
to be low
to make something
low
my
internal department
next year
to go down
to come down
tomorrow
the year after next
year
cold noodle
ice water
ice coffee
too, too much
to go over
to put inside
to put on something
(for someone)
yes
necktie
four
year
yellow
yellow color
to be yellow
to sing a song
to go to a karaoke room
to sing
things for old people
to play for someone’s benefit
to play basketball
to be high
someone/anyone,
who (subject)
Appendix 2: Korean-English Vocabulary

다니다 da-ni-da
다음 다 deul
다음에 주다 da-deum-eo ju-da
다른데 da-reun de
다리 da-ri
다림질하다 da-rim-jil-ha-da
다방 da-bang,
다섯 da-seot
다시 da-si
다음 날 da-eum-ttal
다음 번 da-eum-beon
다음 주 da-eum-jju
다음에 da-eum-e
다치다 da-chi-da
다행하다 da-haeng-i-da
단골 dan-gol
단골이 되다 dan-gol-i doe-da

다 ألف리 dan-bal meo-ri
단지 dan-ji
단다 dat-da
단히 da-chi-da
단다 dal
단다 dal-da
단일 dal-leo
단일성 dal-leo-dang
단고기 dak-go-gi
단박해 보이다 dap-dap-hae bo-i-da
단장을 쓰다 dap-jang-eul sseu-da
단색 tat-sae
대머리 dae-meo-ri
대중 dae-chung
대학 dae-hak
대학교 dae-hak-gyo
대화하다 dae-hang-no
대화방 다이어 시대 dae-hang-saeng
대학원 dae-hag-won
대학원생 다이어 시대 대학원생 dae-hag-won:sseng
대한은행 dae-han-eun-haeng
대머리 다 deo
대문 deo-un nal
데이터 dae-wo-ji-da

덕분에 deuk-bun-e
답다 deop-da
 디리고 오다 길다 de-ri-go o-da/ga-da
도와 드리다 do-wa deu-ri-da
도와주다 do-wa-ju-da

도장 do-jang
도착하다 do-chan-da
독일 dog-il
독일 사람 dog-il-ssa-ram
독일어 dog-il-eo
독일인 dog-il-in
독하다 do-ka-da

그들길이 되다 dan-gol-i doe-da

뇌 구 nu-gu.
뇌나 nu-na
눈 nun
눈이 오다 nun-i o-da
눈다 nup-da
눈히다 nu-pi-da

뉴질랜드 nyu-jil-laen-deu
뉴질랜드 사람 nyu-jil-laen-deu sa-ram
뉴질랜드인 nyu-jil-laen-deu-in
눈다 neul-da

눈게 nut-ge
눈다 neat-da
눈여도 nuj-eo-do

다 da
다 같이 da ga-chi
다 되다 da doe-da

다이다 da-ni-da
다음 다 deul
다음에 주다 da-deum-eo ju-da
다른데 da-reun de
다리 da-ri
다림질하다 da-rim-jil-ha-da
다방 da-bang,
다섯 da-seot
다시 da-si
다음 날 da-eum-ttal
다음 번 da-eum-beon
다음 주 da-eum-jju
다음에 da-eum-e
다치다 da-chi-da
다행하다 da-haeng-i-da
단골 dan-gol
단골이 되다 dan-gol-i doe-da

someone/anyone, who
man’s older sister
snow, eye
to snow
to lay down
to lay someone down
New Zealand
New Zealand (adj.)
New Zealander
to be old (person or animal)
late
to be late
at latest

all
all together
to be all done, to wear out, to be all done
to attend
everyone, all
to trim
other places
leg
to iron
café, coffee shop
five
again
next month
next time
next week
next time
to get injured
to be lucky
regular customer
to become a regular customer

shoulde-length hair
apartment complex
to close
to be closed
months
to be sweet
dollars
per dollar
chicken
to look heavy
to write a reply
5 days’ bald
roughly
college
college, university
university street
college student
graduate school
graduate student
Dae-Han Bank
home, house (hon.)
more
hot day
to become hot, to get hot
to be hot
thanks to (you)
to be hot
to bring/take
(someone)
to help (hon.)
to help for someone’s benefit
stamp, seal
to arrive
Germany
German
German language
German
be to strong, to be severe
Appendix 2: Korean-English Vocabulary

dool-eo-o-da
dool

doeung

Deung-gi-u-pyeon
doeung-san-eul ha-da/ga-da
di-ja-i-neo
di-ja-in
tta-teeu-ta-da
tta-ra-o-da
tta-reeu-reeung

ttal

ttam-i-na-da
tto
tok sat-da
tok-ba-ro
tok-ba-ro ga-da

ttwi-co-seo

deo-si-a
deo-si-a sa-ram
to enter
to climb a mountain
to be warm
to follow
(ring, telephone)
to sweat
again
to be same
straight
to go straight
by running

tto enter

to wash
out

counter for animals
something to drink
mouthwash
to like, to fit
someone's taste
to not like
mile

money

to win money
to save money
to receive money
to earn money
to send money
to spend money
to lose money
to misplace money
to give money
to find money
to withdraw money
to need money
to turn
to pass away
same age
round
village, town
younger sibling
Asian studies
alumni assembly
pork
to become
to go back
to wear (scarf)
to dry clean, blow dry
to have a blow dry, to dry clean
to play drum
to give (hon.)
to eat (hon.)
to hear
to take, to eat (hon.)
to stop by
to be heard
to enter

Drina deu-ra-i

deu-ni-i-ha-da
deu-ni-o-chi-da
deu-deu-da
deu-deul-da
deu-si-da
deu-deul-da
deu-deul-da
deu-deul-da
deu-si-da
deu-deul-da
deu-deul-da
deu-si-da
deu-deul-da
deu-deul-da
deu-deul-da
deu-deul-da

dew ma-il

ma-il ma-il

ma-il ma-il

ma-il ma-il
머리가 아프다 meo-ri-ga a-peu-da
머리를 감다 meo-ri-reul gam-tta
머리를 깎다 meo-ri-reul kkak-da
머리를 다듬다 meo-ri-reul deum-tta
머리를 말리다 meo-ri-reul ma-li-da
머리를 빗다 meo-ri-reul bit-da
머리를 자르다 meo-ri-reul ja-reu-da
머리를 행구다 meo-ri-reul heng-gu-da
머리 색깔 meo-ri-saek-kkal
머리핀 meo-ri-pin
مكن meong-neun nyak
먹다 meok-da
먹이 보다 meog-oo bo-da
먹이 다 meog-ja-da
먹지 meon-jeo
열다 meol-da
메뉴 meo-nyu
메시지 me-se-ji
멕시코 mek-si-ko
멕시코 사람 mek-si-ko sa-ram
멕시코인 mek-si-ko-in
며느리 myeo-neu-ri
대서 myeo-chil
영 myeong
먹 myeot
먹 가지 myeot ga-ji
먹 개 myeot-gae
먹 논생 myeon-neo-on-saeng
먹 번째 myeot-beon-jiye
먹 시 myeot-si
먹 시램 myeot-si-jeum
to have headache
to wash one’s hair,
to shampoo
to have a haircut
(to man)
to trim hair
to have a towel dry
to brush hair
to have a haircut
(to woman)
to rinse out, to wash out
hair color
hairpin
pills
to eat
to try to eat
to feed someone
ahead, first
to be far
menu
message
Mexico
Mexican
daughter-in-law
several days, what date?
persons
what
a couple of, several
how many items?
which year of being
born?
what is the order [of
something]?
what time?
approximately what
time?
what is the version/episode/sequence of something?
what is the order of something.
all
the day after
tomorrow
not to know
to take someone (hoh.)
to bring someone (hon.)
to bring someone (hon.)
to take care (hon.)
shape
hat
throat, neck
to have a sore throat
muffler/scarf
pastor
Thursday
to take a bath
to be thirsty
to have a sore throat
not to see
to be decent
jaywalk
knee
to be scared/afraid
to put on hair
mousse/gel
some kind of, what kind of, what
special day
what day?
something/anything, what
literature

Appendix 2: Korean-English Vocabulary

물 mul
물병 면 mul-laeng-myeon
물다 mul-da
물리다 mul-li-da
물리학 mul-li-hak
물수건 mul-sseu-geon
물약 mul-lyak
물어보다 mul-eo-bo-da
쉬 mwo
미국 mi-guk
미국 사람 mi-guk-sa-ram
미국 시민 mi-guk-si-min
미국인 mi-gug-in
미술 mi-sul
미술관에 가다 mi-sul-gwan-e ga-da
미술대학 (미대) mi-sul-dae-hak (mi-dae)
미사인 mi-si-gan
미식축구를 하다 mi-sik-chuk-gu-reul ha-da
미용사 mi-yong-sa
일 mit

바깥 ba-kkat
바꾸다 ba-kku-da
바꾸려 오다 ba-kku-reo o-da
바껴주다 ba-kkwo-ju-da
바다 쪽 ba-da jok
바람이 불다 ba-ram-i bul-da
바로 ba-ro
바로 가다 ba-ro ga-da
바로 뒤 ba-ro dwi
바른 악 ba-reu-neun nyak
바쁘게 ba-ppeu-ge
바쁘다 ba-ppeu-da

수어

water
cold noodle soup
to bite
physics
wet towel
liquid medicine
to ask
what, something
United States of America
American
American citizen
American fine arts

to go to an art gallery
art school
Michigian
to play football
hairstylist
under, beneath, underneath

out, outside
to change, to switch
to come to exchange
to change, to switch (telephones)
sea side
the wind blows
as soon as possible (a.s.a.p.)
to go directly
right behind
ointment
busily
to be busy
Appendix 2: Korean-English Vocabulary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>별원 byeong-won</td>
<td>hospital, clinic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>보내는 사람 bo-nae-neun sa-ran.</td>
<td>sender</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>보내다 bo-nae-da</td>
<td>to send</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>보다 bo-da</td>
<td>to see</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>보통패스 bo-ding-pae-seu</td>
<td>boarding pass</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>보라색 bo-ra-saek</td>
<td>purple (color)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>보통 bo-reum</td>
<td>to see</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>보라주 bo-yo ju-da</td>
<td>to show</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>보라색 bo-i-da</td>
<td>to be seen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>보통 보통 bo-tong</td>
<td>in general, medium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>보통 보통 bo-tong u-pyon</td>
<td>regular mail</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>보험카드 bo-heom-ka-deu</td>
<td>to be busy, to be</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>복잡하다 bok-ja-pa-da</td>
<td>crowded</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

볼 bom

볼다 boep-da

부드러운 머리 bu-deu-reo-un neo-ri | soft hair |
부드러워 보이다 bu-deu-reo-wo bo-i-da | to look soft |
부드럽다 bu-deu-reop-da | to be soft |
부모 bu-mo | parents |
부산 bu-san | Pusan |
부산혈 bu-san-haeng | going to Pusan |
부지다 bu-chi-da | to send |
부득하다 bu-ta-ka-da | to request minutes, persons |

춘 bun

춘홍색 bun-hong-saek | (hon.) pink color |
بول bal | dollars |
볼다 but-da | to be swollen |
볼다 but-da | to attach, to be attached |

블라우스 beul-la-u-seu | blouse |
비 bi | rain |
비가 오다 bi-ga o-da | to rain |
비교적 bi-gyo-jeok | relatively |
비디오를 보다 vi-di-o-reul bo-da | to watch a videotape |
비밀번호 bi-mil-beon-ho | PIN number |
비밀번호 비밀번호 bi-bim-naeng-mycon | cold noodle with hot paste |
비빔밥 bi-bim-ppap

비서 bi-seo
비슷하다 bi-seu-ta-da
비싸다 bi-ssa-da
비올라 vi-o1-la-reul kyeo-da
비자 bi-ja
비행기 bi-haeng-gi
비행기표 bi-haeng-gi-pyo
비행장 bi-haeng-jang
비료주다 bi-ryoju-da

배른 우편 ppa-reun u-pyoon
빨간 ppal-gan
빨간색 ppal-gan-saek
빨갛다 ppal-ga-a
빨래를 하다 ppal-ae-reul ha-da
빨리 ppal-li
행집 ppang-jjip
배달 ppa-a-da

뱀기다 ppaet-gi-da
뱀다 ppaet-da
뱀빛깔 어리 ppeot-ppeo-tan meo-ri

rice with mixed vegetables
secretary
to be similar
to be expensive
viola
visa
airplane
airplane ticket
airport
to lend for someone’s benefit
express mail
red
red (color)
to be red
to do laundry
fast
bakery
to pull out, to take off (rings, gloves, etc.)
to be taken away
to take away
thick hair

사월 sa-avol
사위 sa-wi
사이 대 sa-i-da
사이즈 sa-i-jeu
사인 sa-in
사장 sa-jang

사진관 sa-jin-gwan
사진을 찍다 sa-jin-eul jjik-da
사촌 sa-chon
사촌동생 sa-chon-dong-saeng
사회학 sa-hoe-hak
서울 sa-heul
산 san
산 끝 san jjok
산봉사 산-jeu-ta-da
산책을 하다 san-chaeug-eul ha-da
산다 sal-da
산 sam
상사 sa-m.
상사의 산-greyong
상월 sam-wol
상론 sam-chon

상가 sang-ga
상영 대학 (상대) sang-gyeong-dae-hak (sang-dae)
상관 없다 sang-gwan-eop-da

상상이 안 되다 sang-sang-i an-doe-da

상자 sang-ja
상자에 담다 sang-cheo-ga na-da
상태 sang-tae
상하대 sang-ha-da
새로 sae-ro
새로 나온다 sae-ro na-o-da
새벽 sae-byeok
새벽 sae-kkal
새벽 sae-sang

April
son-in-law
7-up
size
signature
president of a company
photograph
developing shop
to take a picture
cousin
younger cousin
sociology
3 days
mountain
mountainside
to be neat and fresh
to go for a walk
to live
three
triangle
March
uncle (father’s brothers in general)
mail
business school
to be all right, to not matter
to be unable to imagine
box
to get hurt
condition
to be damaged
newly
to be newly released
dawn
color
color and shape
서울 saeng-mul-hak
서산 saeng-seon
서산 saeng-sin
서일 saeng-il
서원하다 sya-wo-reul ha-da
서양하다 syam-pu-ha-da
서다 seo-da
서른 seo-reun
서버스 sseo-bi-seeu
서울 seoul
서점 seo-jem
서다 seok-da
서울하다 seon-mul-ha-da
선생 seon-saeng
선생기 seon-pung-gi
설거지를 하다 seol-geo-ji-reul ha-da
설사하다 seol-ssa-ha-da
설씨 seop-ssi
설명 seong-myegong
설명 seong-ham
세수를 하다 se-su-reul ha-da
세워 놓다 se-wo deu-ri-da
세워 주다 se-wo ju-da
세일기간 se-il-gi-gan
세일해 놓다 se-il-hae deu-ri-da
세탁기 se-tak-gi
센트 sen-teu
셋 set
셋째 sye-cho
소고기 so-go-gi
소방서 so-bang-seo
소방차 so-bang-cha
소아과 so-a-kkwa
소주 so-ju
San Diego
to form, to open
to menstruate, to be having one's period
biology
fish
birthday (hon.)
birthday
to take a shower
to shampoo
to stop
thirty
service
Seoul
bookstore
to mix
to give a present
teacher
fan
to wash dishes
to have diarrhea
Celsius
name (formal)
nam (hon.)
to wash one's face
to stop (hon.)
to stop
sale period
to discount (hon.)
washing machine
cents
three
shirt
beef
fire department, fire station
fire truck
pediatrics
soju
소포 so-po
소화가 안 되다 so-hwa-ga an-doe-da
속 sok
속달우편 sok-dal-u-pyeon
속옷 sog-ot
손 son
생/발을 씻다 son/bal-eul ssit-da
손가락 son-kka-rak
손녀 son-nyeo
손님 son-nim
손자 son-ja
손주 son-ju
손절하다 son-jil-ha-da
소핑가 syo-ping-ga-da
수건 su-geun
수고하다 su-go-ha-da
수박 su-bak
수수료 su-su-ryo
수영을 하다 su-yeong-eul ha-da
수영장 su-yeongjang
수의일 su-ye-il
수원 su-won
수포 stopyo
수락 su-hak
습쉬기가 됐더다 sum-swi-gi-ga him-deul-da
습을 씻다 sum-eul swi-da
현 swin
슈퍼마켓 syu-peo-ma-keot
소주바 서울-seu-mu-nal
소주바 서울-seu-mul
소행하는 서울-seu-ye-teo
소행하는 서울-seu-ka-peu
스케이트를 타다 seu-ke-i-teu-reul ta-da
스키를 타다 seu-ki-reul ta-da
스타킹 seu-ta-king
스트레스가 많다/많이다
seu-teu-re-ssae-ga man-ta / ssa-i-da
package
to have indigestion
in, inside
express mail
underwear
hand
to wash one's hands/feet
finger
granddaughter
guest, visitor,
customer
grandson
grandchildren
to take care
to go shopping
towel
to work hard
watermelon
fee, charge
to swim
swimming pool
Wednesday
Su-won, Korea
check
mathematics
to have difficulty
breathing
to breath
fifty
supermarket
20 days
twenty
sweater
scarf
to skate
to ski
panty hose
to be stressed
스트레스가 풀리다 seu-teu-re-sseu-ga pu-li-da
스트레이트 파마 seu-teu-re-i-teu pa-ma

스페인 seu-pe-in
스페어 사람 seu-pe-in sa-ram
스페안어 seu-pe-in-eo
스페안언 seu-pe-in-in
스프레이를 하다 seu-peu-re-i-reul ha-da
슬프다 seuel-pu-da
슬도 seu-up-do
시 si
시간 si-gan
시간에 있다 si-gan(-i) it-da
시계 si-ge
시계 발 si-ge ppang
시그램에 si-kkeu-reop-ge
시그램다 si-kkeu-reop-da
시내 si-nae
시다 si-da
시야비남 si-a-beo-nim
시야매남 si-eo-meo-nim

시청하다 si-won-ha-da
시월 si-wol
사작하다 si-ja-ka-da
시키다 si-ki-da
식구 sik-gu

식사 후 sik-sa-hu
식점에 sik-jeon-e
식후에 si-ku-e
신기다 si-gi-da
신나다 sin-na-da
신다 sin-tta
신발 sin-bal
신발가게 sin-bal-kka-ge
신발주게 sin-bun-jjeung
신청서 sin-cheong-seo

to relieve stress
straight permanent
(hairstyle)
Spain
Spanish
Spanish language
Spanish
to put on hairspray
to be sad
humidity
o'clock
time, hour
to have the time
watch, clock
watch repair store
loudly
to be loud
downtown
to be sour
father-in-law
(female speaker)
mother-in-law
(female speaker)
to be cool
October
to start
to order
family, family
members (casual)
after a meal
before a meal
after a meal
to put shoes on
someone
to be excited
to wear
shoes
shoe store
ID card
application

선호 sin-ho
선호 등 sin-ho-deung
실내 수영장 sil-lae su-yeong-jang

실례 sil-lye
실례지만 sil-lye-jii-man
실다 sil-ta
실어하다 sil-co-ha-da
심리적 sim-ni-hak
심심하다 sim-sim-ha-da
심하다 sim-ha-da

실 sip
실이 월 sip-i-wol
실일 월 sip-il-wol
실감 다 sing-geop-da
실되기 ssal-ssal-ha-da
서 있다 sseu it-da
서 주다 sseu ju-da
쓰다 sseu-da

쓰이다 sseu-i-da

음

아 a
‘아’ 하다 a-ha-da
아니 a-ni-a
아니다 a-ni-da
아니면 a-ni-myeon
아니오 a-ni-o
아들 a-deul
아래 a-rae
아무 a-mu
아무 빈 a-mu bun
아버지 a-beo-ji
아이 a-i
아이구 a-i-gu
아주 a-ju
아주머니 a-ju-meo-ni
아직 a-jik

signal
traffic signal
indoor swimming pool
bad manners
Excuse me....
to not be likable
to dislike
psychology
to feel bored
to be serious, to be severe
ten
December
November
to be blend
to be chilly
to be written
to write
to write, to use, to be tart
to be used

ah
to say “ah”
wife
not to be
or, if not ~
no
son
under, below, down
any
anyone
father
child, kid
oh
very, very much
middle-aged woman
yet, still
아직도 a-jik-do
아침 a-cham
아침 a-chim
아침을 먹다 a-chim-eul meok-da
아파트 a-pa-teu
아프다 a-peu-da
아홉 a-hop
아홉 아-heu-ré
아홉 a-heun
안 an
안경 an-gyeong
안과 an-kkwa
안기다 an-gi-da
안녕하다 an-nyeong-ha-da
안녕히 an-nyeong-hi
안타 an-tta
안타 an-tta
아니 있다 an-ja it-da
안하다 an-cho-da
안나다 an-da
알아서 al-a-seo

알아서 하다 al-a-seo ha-da

알약 al-lyak
알 ap
알머리 an-meo-ri
앞으로 ap-eu-ro
앰뷸런스 aem-byul-leon-seu

yet
yet
oh,
morning, breakfast
to have a breakfast
apartment
to be hurt, to be sick
nine
9 days
ninety
inside, not
glasses
ophthalmology
to be held
to be well
safely, peacefully
to hold
to sit
to be sitting
to seat someone
to know
in a way that one
thinks is right
without getting
permission or
confirmation
from others
to do something in
a way that one
thinks is right
without asking
permission
or receiving
confirmation
from another
person
pill, tablet
front
front hair
from now on
ambulance

야구를하다 ya-gu-reul ha-da
악국 yak-guk
악방 yak-bang
악사 yak-sa
악속시간 yak-sok-si-gan
악을 먹다 yag-eul meok-da
악하다 yak-da
악화대학(의대) yak-hak-dae-hak (yak-da)
앙말 yang-mal
양식 yang-sik
양식당 yang-sik-dang
양주 yang-ju
양치질하다 yang-chi-jiil-ha-da.
양화점 yang-hwa-jeom
어깨 eo-kae
어느 eo-neu
어느 둘 eo-neu-bun
어느 쪽 eo-neu jjak
어디 eo-di

어려서요? eo-teo-sc-yo
어쁜 eo-teott
어떤 eo-teon geo
어떻게 eo-teo-ke
어떻다 eo-teo-ta
어졌을 때 eo-reo-eul ttac
어머 eo-meo
어머니 eo-meo-ni
어서 eo-seo
어울리게 eo-ul-li-ge
어울리다 eo-ul-li-da
어제 eo-je
어치웠다 eo-ji-reop-da
어휴 eo-hu
억 eok
언니 eun-ni
언어학 eo-a-eo-hak

to play baseball
drugstore
drugstore
pharmacist
appointment time
to take a medication
to be weak
college of pharmacy
socks
Western food
Western restaurant
Western liquors
to brush one's teeth
shoe store
shoulder
some, which
which person
which way
where, somewhere/
anywhere
How about ~?,
How is it?
which, a certain,
what kind of
which one
how, somehow
to be how
when (someone
was) young
uh uh
mother
quickly, please
match well
to match well
yesterday
to be dizzy
alas, wow...
hundred million
woman's older sister
linguistics
언제 eon-je
언제나 eon-je-na
언제든지 eon-je-deun-ji
얼굴 eol-gul
 얼다 eol-da
얼리다 eol-li-da
얼마 eol-ma
얼마 전 eol-ma jeon
얼마나 eol-ma-na
얼음이 얼다 eol-eum-i eol-da
없다 eop-da
영어 eong-deong-i
영어다 eo-eo-keon
영지니어 en-ji-ni-eo
여권 yeo-kkwon
여기 yeo-gi
여덟 yeo-deol
여몇 yeo-dong-saeng
여덟레 yeo-deu-re
여덟다 yeo-deun
여름 yeo-reum
여섯 yeo-seot
여자 yeo-ja
여우여 보다 yeo-jju-eo bo-da
여행 yeo-baeng
여행을 하다 yeo-baeng-eul ha-da/ga-da
역사학 yeok-sa-hak
연극 구경을 가다/하다 yeong-en-guk gu-yeong-eul ga-da/ga-da
연노란색 yeon-no-ran-saek
연두색 yeon-do-rang-saek
연락 yeol-lak
연락 드리다 yeol-lak du-eu-ri-da
연락하다 yeol-la-ka-da
연말 yeon-mal
연세 yeon-se

sometime/anytime, when?
whenever, always whenever
face
to freeze
to freeze something how much?
a while ago
how long/much/ many?
the ice freezes
not to exist, not to have
buttocks, hip
air conditioner
engineer
passport
here
eight
younger sister
8 days
eighty
summer
six
woman
ask (hum.)
to travel
to travel
history
to go to watch a play
light yellow (color)
light yellow (color)
light green (color)
contact
to contact (hum.)
to contact
end of the year
age (hon.)

연세가 많으십니다 yeon-se-ga man-eu-si-da
연하다 yeon-ha-da
연한 노란색 yeon-han no-ran-saek
열 yeol
열다 yeol-da
열리다 yeol-li-da
열이 나 다 yeol-i na-da
열출 yeol-heul
열색 yeom-saek
열색하다 yeom-sae-ka-da
열서 yeop-seo
열세 yeot-sae
열국 yeong-guk
열국 사람 yeong-guk sa-ram
열국인 yeong-gug-in
열상 yeong-sang
열수통 yeong-su-jenng
열어 yeong-eo
열마 yeong-ha
열화 구경을 가다/하다 yeong-hwa gu-yeong-eul ga-da/ga-da
열화(들) 보다 yeong-hwa(-reu) bo-da
열 yeop
열머리 yeom-mco-ri
예 ye
예급하다 ye-geum-ha-da
예방용 ye-bang-nyong
예쁘게 ye-ppeu-ge
예쁘다 ye-ppeu-da
예순 ye-sun
오 o
오늘 o-neul
오디 o-da
오래간만에 o-rae-gan-man-e
오래간만이다 o-rae-gan-man-i-da
오래되다 o-rae-do-da
오른쪽 o-reun-jjok

to be old (hon.)
to be light, to be tender
light yellow (color)
ten
to open
to be open
to have fever
10 days
dyeing
to dye
postcard
6 days
England
British
British
above zero
receipt
English
below zero
to go to watch a movie
beside, side, nearby
side hair
yes, OK
to save money, to deposit
for prevention
pretty, beautifully	to be pretty
sixty
five
today
to come
after a long time
time no see
to be old (object)
right side
오른쪽으로 가다 o-reun-jjog-eu-ro ga-da
오바 o-ba
오빠 o-ppa
오월 o-wol
오전 o-jeon
오토바이 o-to-ba-i
오후 o-hu
온도 on-do
올라가다 ol-la-ga-da
올라오다 ol-la-o-da
올해 ol-hae
옷 ot
옷가게 ot-ga-ge
의 wa
와이셔츠 wa-i-syeo-cheu
와 wae
외과 oe-kkwa
외사촌 oe-sa-chon
외삼촌 oe-sam-chon
외숙모 oe-sung-mo
원쪽 oen-jjok
원쪽으로 가다 oen-jjog-eu-ro ga-da
요금 yo-geum
요즘 yo-jeum
우리 u-ri
우체국 u-che-guk
우체국 직원 u-che-guk jig-won
우체부 u-che-bu
우체통 u-che-tong
우편번호 u-pyeon-beon-ho
우편요금 u-pyeon-yo-geum
우표 u-pyo
우표를 붙이다 u-pyo-reul bu-chi-da
우표를 붙다 u-pyo-reul sa-da
우회전하다 u-hoe-jeon-ha-da,
운동선수 un-dong-seon-su
문건기사 un-jeon-gi-sa
문전하다 un-jeon-ha-da
to turn right
cloth
woman's older brother
May
A.M.
motorcycle
P.M.
temperature
to go up
to come up
this year
clothes
clothing store
wow
dress shirts
why
external department
cousin (maternal)
uncle (maternal)
aunt (외상촌's wife)
left
to turn left
fare
these days
we, us, our
post office
post office employee
postman
mailbox
zip code
postage, postal charge
stamp
to put on a stamp
to buy a stamp
to make a right turn
sportsman
driver
to drive
문전해서 un-jeon-hae-seo
흐다 ul-da
울리다 ul-li-da
웃기다 ut-gi-da
웃다 ut-da
원 won
원피스 won-pi-seu
원형 won-hyeong
월 wol
월말 wol-mal
월요일 wol-yo-il
원일 wen-il
위 wi
유월 yu-wol
유치원 yu-chi-won
유치원생 yu-chi-won-saeng
육 yuk
육교 yu-gyo
은행 eum-haeng
은행거래소 eun-haeng-geo-rae-sin-cheong-seo
은행국 eum-nyo-su
움직이 eum-sik
음악 eum-ak
음악대학 (음대) eum-ak-dae-hak (cum-dac)
음악을 듣다 eum-ag-eul deut-da
음악원에 가다 eum-a-koe-e ga-da
의과대학 (의대) ui-kkwa-dae-hak (ui-dae)
의료보험카드 ui-ryo-bo-heom-ka-deu
의사 ui-sa
의사 선생님 ui-sa seon-saeng-nim
의학 ui-hak
이 i
이/or/저 분 i/geu/jeo bun
이/or/저 사람 i/geu/jeo sa-ram
이/or/저 i/geu/jeo
by driving
to cry
to make someone cry
to make someone laugh
to laugh
Korean won
dress
round
month
end of the month
Monday
what thing?
top, above, up
June
kindergarten
kindergarten student
six
overpass
bank
bank account
application
drink, beverage
food
music
music school
to listen to music
to go to a concert
medical school
health insurance
card
doctor
doctor
medical study
two
this/that person
(hon.)
this/that person
this/that
일식 il-sikk
일식당 il-sikk-dang
일어나다 il-eo-na-da
일요일 il-yo-il
일월 il-wol
일주일 han il-juu-il
일찍 il-jiik
일혼 il-heun
일어주다 ilg-eo-jii-da
임 ip
임금표 ip-geum-pyo
임다 ip-da
임여 보다 ib-ee-bo-da
임에 맞다 ib-e mat-da
임원하다 ib-won-ha-da
임하다 i-pi-da
임을 in-mom
있다 it-da
 invalibri 다 i-ee-beo-ri-da

일/그/저기 i/geu/jeo-geo
이가 아포다 i-ga a-peu-da
이것 저것 i-geot jen-geot
이다 i-da
이렇게 i-teo-ke
이래 i-re
이를 닦다 i-reul dak-da
이름 i-reum
이리 i-ri
이모 i-mo
이모부 i-mo-bu

이발사 i-bal-ssa
이번 달 i-beon-ttal
이번 주 i-beon-ju
이사 i-sa
이사하다 i-sa-ha-da
이상기운 형상 i-sang-gi-on hyeon-sang

이상하다 i-sang-ha-da

이월 i-wol
이제 i-je
이족 i-ijok
이들을 han i-teul jeon
인류학 il-lyu-hak
인문학 (인문학) in-mun-daek (in-mun-daeh)
in-sang
인상되다 in-sang-doe-da
인연 in-yeon
일 il

일곱 il-gop
일기예보 il-gi-ye-bo
일반우편 il-ban u-pyeon
일본 il-bon
일본 사람 il-bon sa-ram
일본어 il-bon-eo
일본인 il-bon-in

this/that one
to have a toothache
this and that
to be
like this
7 days
to brush one’s teeth
name
this way
aunt (maternal)
nice (어모의’s
husband)
man’s hairdresser
this month
this week
moving
to move
abnormal
(temperature)
to be strange, to be
unusual
February
now
this side, this way
2 days
anthropology
school of the
humanities
facial impression
to be increased
destiny
one, date, things,
work, job
seven
weather forecast
regular mail, ground
mail
Japan
Japanese
Japanese language
Japanese

Appendix 2. Korean-English Vocabulary
제작년 jae-jang-nyeon
지 jeo
지금하다 jeo-geum-ha-da
지기 jeo-gi
지복 jeo-nyeok
지بعد 먹다 jeo-nyeog-eul meok-da
지복 jeo-jjak
지휘 jeo-hi
전 세계적으로 jeon se-gye-jeog-su-iro
전부 jeon-bu
전화 jeon-hwa
전화 걸다 jeon-hwa geol-da
전화 드리다 jeon-hwa deu-ri-da
전화번호 jeon-hwa-beon-bo
전화하다 jeon-hwa-ha-da
정심 jeom-sim
정심 먹다 jeom-sim meok-da
정심시간 jeom-sim-si-gan
정원 jeom-won
정원 다 jeom-jau-ta
정원 옆 것 jeom-jan-eun geot
정원 jeom-jeom
정가 jeong-kka
정리하다 jeong-ri-ha-da
정말 jeong-mal
정사항 정교 sa-ga-kyeong
정상혁정 정교-sa-nam-kyeong
정상 정교 jeong-jang
정상 바지 jeong-jang ba-ji
정치학 jeong-chi-hak
제 jae
제가 보기에는 jae ga bo-gi-e-neun
제وبر le-geum-jeom
제일 je-il
제일필명 je-il-bi-l ding

Appendix 2: Korean-English Vocabulary

치실 chi-sil
close
치약 chi-yak
toothpaste
toothpaste
치주염 chi-ju-yeom
gum disease
gum disease
치열 chil
pain, pain
치열 chol

카드 ka-deu
card, credit card
카드놀이를하다 ka-deu nol-i-reul ha-da
to play a card game
to play a card game
카페 ka-pe
café, coffee shop
café, coffee shop
캐나다 캐나다 kae-na-da
Canada
캐나다 사랑 kae-na-da sa-ram
Canadian
캐나다인 kae-na-da-in
Canadian
캐주얼 kae-ju-eol
casual
casual
c커피 keo-teu-ha-da
coffee
coffee
커피숍 keo-pi-syop
coffee shop
coffee shop
컴퓨터 keom-pu-teo
computer
computer
컴퓨터 게임을하다 keom-py-ut-teo ge-im-eul ha-da
to play a game
to play a game
코코 코코 koko ma-ki-da
nose
코트 co-teu
coat
col
플라에나다 kon-mul-i na-da
to have a runny nose
to have a runny nose
크게 keu-ge
widely, big, loudly
크네브사 keun-a-beo-ji
uncle (father's older brother)
크네브사 keun-eo-meo-ni
aunt (sville's wife)
크린 나다 keun-il na-da
have trouble
have trouble
클라리넷 keul-la-ri-net-eul bul-da
to play clarinet
to play clarinet
타기 ta-qi
to ride, to ride
타는 태 ta-neun de
to ride
타다 ta-da
타다 ta-da
타다 ta-da
to ride, to ride, to burn
to ride, to ride, to burn
타판형 ta-won-hyeong
타일 ta-il
tile
tile
Appendix 2: Korean-English Vocabulary

편리하다 pyeo-li-ha-da
편의점 pyeon-ui-jeom
편지 pyeon-ji
편지 부치기 pyeon-ji bu-chi-gi
편지/소포를 받다 pyeon-ji/so-po-reul bat-da
편지/소포를 부치다 pyeon-ji/so-po-reul bu-chi-da
편지를 쓰다 pyeon-ji-reul sseu-da
편지 불투 pyeon-ji-bong-tu
편지 pyeon-ji-ji
포도주 po-do-ju
표 pyo
폴다 púl-da
프랑스 pea-rang-sseu
프랑스 사람 pea-rang-sseu sa-ram
프랑스어 pea-rang-sseu-oe
프랑스인 pea-rang-sseu-in
플랫폼 pea-lae-whom
플루스 pea-lo-seu
플롯을 불다 pea-lus-eul bul-da
피가 나타 pi-ga na-da
피곤하다 pi-gon-ha-da
피아노를 치다 pi-a-no-reul chi-da
필요하다 pil-yo-ha-da
필요한 것 pil-yo-han geot
to be convenient
to be convenient
store
letter
sending a mail
to receive a letter/ package
to send a letter/ package
to write a letter/ envelope
letter paper
wine
ticket
to untie
France
French
French language
French platform
floss
to play flute
to bleed
to be tired
to play piano
to need
things to be needed

교
파란 pa-ran
파란색 pa-ran-sack
파랗다 pa-ra-ta
파라미르 pa-ma meo-ri
파마하다 pa-ma-ha-da
파문드 pa-un-deu
파면 pa-jeon
빨 pal
빨다 pal-da
빨리다 pal-li-da
빨로 pal-wol
to play ping-pong
fitting room
to be born
to burn something
taxi
chin
to shake off
to play tennis
to watch TV
Saturday
to vomit
deposit and withdrawal record, bank account
opening a bank account
time to leave the office
to release (from a hospital)
to play trumpet
to play a card game
especially
to turn on
blue
blue (color)
to be blue
permanent-waved hair
to have a permanent pounds
scallion pancake
eight, arm
to sell
to be sold
August

伝え 넣다 teul-eo no-ta
통장 만들기 tong-jang man-deul-gi
퇴근 시간 toe-geun-si-gan
퇴원하다 toe-won-ha-da
드럼셋 teu-reom-pes-eul bul-da
드럼프를 치다 teu-reom-peu-reul chi-da
특별히 teuk-byeo-li-hi

one
to do
1 day
per day
white
white (color)
to be white
school year
student
Korea
Korean (hon.)
Korean
한국계 han-guk-gye
한국어 han-gug-co
한국인 han-gug-in
한번 han-beon
한식 han-sik
한식당 han-sik-dang
한식집 han-sik-jip
한영서점 han-yeong-seo-jeom

한잔 han-jan
할 수 없다 hal sue op-da

할머니 hal-meo-ni
할머니댁 hal-meo-ni dack

할아버지 hal-a-beo-ji
할아버지댁 hal-a-beo-jidack

항공편으로 hang-gong-pyeon-euro
항상 hang-sang
해드리다 hae deu-ri-da
해 주다 hae ju-da
힌두 hae-deu-pon
항해하다 hae-ka-da

행인 haeng-in
허리 heo-ri
해외 저자 dha eo di-ja-i-neo
해외 크림 heo-ko keu-rim
현금 hyeon-geum
현금지갑 hyeon-geum-gi-geup-gi
현금카드 hyeon-geum-ka-deu

항 hyeong
호주 ho-ju
호주 사람 ho-ju sa-ram
호주인 ho-ju-in

혼자 hon-si
호주 hon-ja

Korean-, related to Korea
Korean language
Korean once
Korean food
Korean restaurant
Korean restaurant
Han-Young
Bookstore

one cup
cannot help, there is no other choice
grandmother
grandmother's house (hon.)
grandfather
to share a ride
air mail, first-class mail
via airmail
always
to do (hun.)
to do
cellular phone
to be happy
passer-by
waist
hairdresser
hair cream
cash
ATM machine
ATM card
man's older brother
Australia
Australian
Australian
by any chance, just in case
by oneself, alone
to be angry
Fahrenheit
Tuesday
florist/flower shop
chemistry
welcome party
exchange rate
goes down
the exchange rate
goes up
to exchange money
exchanging currency
to exchange money
company
office employee
grey (color)
crosswalk
much more
to get cloudy
humm...
Appendix 3:


English-Korean Vocabulary
abnormal weather

above zero

above

account

across the street

address

adjacent

afraid

after a long time

after a meal

after a while

afternoon

again

again and again

age

sane age

ah

ahead

air

air conditioner

air mail

via airmail

airline

(domestic)

(international)

airplane

airplane ticket

airport

alias

all

all done

all together

almost

alone

already

although

alumni

alumni assembly

always

ambulance

A.M.

America

American
citizen and

American citizen and

animal

answering machine

anthropology

any

anyone

apartment

apartment complex

appear

application

appointment

appointment time

approximately

April

architecture

arm

arrive

art gallery

art school

as soon as possible

(a.s.a.p.)

Asian studies

ask

at last

at latest

AtM card

ATM machine

attach

attached

attend

August

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beginner's korean

beg
BEGINNER'S KOREAN

aunt 고모 go-mo, 어머니 어머니 ja-ga-yong, 자동차 ja-dong-cha
Australia 호주 bo-ju
Australian 호주 사람 ho-ju sa-ram, 호주인 ho-ju-in
automobile 자동차 ja-ga-yong, 자동차 ja-dong-cha
autumn 가을 ga-eul

B
back 등 deung, 위 dwi
bad 나쁘다 na-ppeu-da
baggage 짐 jin
bakery 빵집 ppang-jiip, 제과점 je-gwa-jeom
bald 대머리 dae-meo-ri
banding machine 자판기 ja-pan-gi
bank 은행 eun-haeng
bank account 은행계신증서 eun-haeng-geo-rae-sin-cheong-seo
bank account application 은행계신증서 eun-haeng-geo-rae-sin-cheong-seo
barber 이발사 i-bal-ssa
baseball 야구 ya-gu

blend 싱글다 sing-goeo-da
block 막다 mak-da
blocked 막히다 ma-ki-da
blouse 블라우스 beul-la-u-seo
blow 불다 bul-da
blow-dry 드라이 deu-ra-i
(nave blue) navy blue
boarding pass 보딩패스 bo-ding-pae-sseu
boat 배 bue
boil 끓이다 keul-ta
boil something 끓이다 keul-i-da
book 책 chaek
bookstore 서점 seojom, 책방 chaek-bang
bored 지루하다 ji-ru-ha-da, 심심하다 sim-sim-ha-da
born 태어나다 tae-eo-na-da
bottle 볼 byeong
box 상자 sang-ja
(to) box 관투하다 gwon-tu-reul ha-da
boxing 관투 gweon-tu
breakfast 아침 a-chim
BEGINNER'S KOREAN

(have) breakfast 아침 음식 a-chim-eul meok-da
breast 가슴 ga-seum
breath 숨 쉬다 sum-eul swi-da
breathing 호흡 ho-huem, 숨 쉼 su-m-sw-gi
(have difficulty) 숨 쉬기가 힘들다 sum-sw-gi-ga him-deul-da
breathing 밧다 balk-da
bring someone 모시고 오다 mo-si-go o-da,
带来 오다 de-ri-go o-da
bring something 가지고 오다 ga-ji-go o-da
British 영국 사람 yeong-guk sa-ram,
영국인 yeong-gug-in
brother 고남보다 go-jang-na-da, 까미도 kkae-jid-da
older 오빠 o-pa, 형 hyeong
younger 남동생 nam-dong-saeng
brown 갈색 gal-saek
light brown 빛나 bit-da, 뭐다 dak-da
brush 머리 브러시 meo-ri-reul bit-da
brush teeth 이불 빼다 i-reul dak-da,
양치질하다 yang-ji-jil-ha-da
build 짓다 jit-da
building 건물 geum-mul
burn 타다 ta-da
burn something 타우다 tae-u-da
bus 버스 boe-seu
(express) bus 고속버스 go-sok-beo-seu
bustily 바쁘게 ba-ppeu-ge
business 경사 jang-aa, 사업 sa-eop
business management 경영학 gyeong-yoeng-hak
business school (상) 대학 sang-gyeong-daehak
(bus) (sang-daeh)
businessman 사업가 sa-eop-ga
busy 바쁘다 ba-ppeu-da, 볼다 bok-ja-pa-da
but 그 뭐지만 gu-eu-reo-chi-man,
그런데 gu-eu-reo-dec
buttocks 엉덩이 eong-deong-i
buy 사다 sa-da

Appendix 3: English-Korean Vocabulary

C
café 다방 da-bang, 카페 ka-pe
Canada 캐나다 kae-na-da
Canadian 캐나다 사람 kae-na-da sa-ram,
Канадский 사람 kae-na-da-in
rental car 자가용 ja-ga-yong, 자동차 ja-dong-cha
rent a car 탱크 ten-teu-kak
카드 ka-deu
play a card game 카드놀이를 한다 ka-deu nol-i-reul ha-da,
카드놀이를 한다 ka-deu nol-i-reul ha-da,
영화 hyeon-geum
cash 현금 kae-ju-eol
catch 잡다 jat-da
caught 잡히다 ja-pi-da
cent 센드 sen-teu
central 중앙 jung-ang
certain 어떤 eo-tecon
(by any) chance 혹시 hok-si
change 거스름 geu-seo-reum-thon, 잔돈 jan-don,
chapter 단 gwa
charge 수수료 su-su-ryo
check 채산서 gye-san-seo, 수표 supyo
checkered pattern 체크무늬 che-keu-mu-nui, che-keu-mu-ni
chemistry 화학 hwa-hak
chest 가슴 ga-seum
chicken 닭고기 dak-go-gi
child 아이 a-i
chilly 쌈칠하다 ssal-ssal-ha-da
chin 뼈 teok
China 중국 jung-guk
Chinese 중국 사람 jung-guk sa-ram,
중국인 jung-gug-in
Chinese food 중국음식 jung-gug-cum-sik
BEGINNER’S KOREAN

Chinese language
중국어 jung-gug-geo
Chinese restaurant
중국식당 jung-guk-sik-dang
civil servant
공무원 gong-mu-won
clarinet
 klarinetteu keul-la-ri-net
play clarinet
 klarinetteu bul-de keul-la-ri-nes-eal bul-da
clan
과 각 가 kkae-kkeu-ta-da
(become) clean
 Mai-ga-ji-da, 깨끗해지다 kkae-kkeu-ta-ji-da
climate
날씨 nul-ssi
climb
올라가다 ol-la-ga-da
climb a mountain
등산을하다/가다 deung-san-eul ha-da/ga-da
clinic
병원 byeong-won
clock
시계 si-ge
close
가깝다 ga-kkap-da, 단다 dat-da
closed
닫히다 da-chi-da
clothes
옷 ot
clothing store
옷가게 ot-ga-ge
cloudy
구름이 커다 gu-reum-i kki-da, 흐려지다 heu-ryeo-jii-da
coat
오바 o-ba, 코트 co-teu
coffee shop
다방 da-bang, 카페 ka-ke, 커피숍 keo-pi-syop
coffee
커피 keo-pi
cola
콜라 kol-la
cold
감기 gam-gi, 감기에 걸린다 gam-gi-e geol-li-da
cold (adjective)
차다 cha-da, 차갑다 cha-gap-da, 춥다 chup-da
cold (noun)
추위지다 chu-woji-da
get cold
감기에 걸리다 gam-gi-e geol-li-da
cold noodle
냉면 naeng-myen
cold noodle soup
물냉면 mul-laeng-myen
cold noodle with hot paste
비빔냉면 bi-bim-naeng-myen
cold water
천물 chan-mul, 녹수 naeng-su
college of pharmacy
약학대학 (약대) yak-hak-dae-hak (yak-dae)
college of physical education
체육대학 (체대) che-yuk-dae-hak (che-dae)
college
대학 dae-hak, 대학교 dae-hak-gyo
college student
대학생 dae-hak-saeng
color
색깔 saek-kkal
color and shape
색상 saek-sang
come
오다 o-da

Appendix 3: English-Korean Vocabulary

come down
내려오다 nae-ryeo-oo-da
come out
나오다 na-o-da
come to see
 찾아 오다 chaj-a o-da,
completely
만나리 오다 man-na-reo o-da
come up
올라오다 ol-la-o-da
company
회사 hoe-sa
computer
컴퓨터 keom-pu-teo
play a
컴퓨터 게임하다 keom-pyu-teo
computer game
게임 ha-da
concert
음악회 eum-a-koe
condition
상태 sang-tae
congestion
남림 ma-kim
(have nasal)
코가 막히다 ke-ga ma-ki-da
construction
공사 gong-sa
on the construction site
공사 중 gong-sa-jung
contact
연락 yeol-lak, 연락하다 yeol-la-ka-da
convenience store
가게 ga-ge, 편의점 pyeon-oo-ui-jeom
cook
음식을 만든다 eum-sig-eul man-deul-da
cooked rice
밥 bab
cool
시원하다 si-won-ha-da
correct
맞다 mat-da
cough
기침 gi-chim, 기침을 하다 gi-chim-eul ha-da
coke
사춘 sa-chon, 원사손 ge-sa-chon
相當 sa-chon-dong-saeng
course
파학 gwa-nok
cousin
사촌 sa-chon, 외사촌 ge-sa-chon
crush card
신용카드 sin-yong-ka-deu
cross
건너다 geon-neo-da
crosswalk
횡단보도 hueng-dan-bo-do
crowd
보행자 bok-ja-pa-da
cry
울다 ul-da
 cúp
올리다 ul-li-da
curly
سلام محلو gop-seul-gop-seul-han
curly hair
เสมอ어 gop-seul meo-ri
customer  손님 son-nim
regular customer  단골 dan-gol
cut  자르다 ja-reu-da

D

damaged  상하다 sang-ha-da
dance  춤을 추다 chum-eul chu-da
dark  진하다 jin-ha-da, 어둡다 eo-dup-da, 밝다 jip-da
date  날 nal, 날짜 nal-ja, 일 il
daughter  딸 ita
daughter-in-law  머느리 myeo-neu-ri
day  날 nat, 날 nal
   per day  하루에 ha-ru-e
December  심이월 sib-i-wol
decent  우난하다 mu-nan-ha-da, 청되고 jeom-jan-ta
deduct  과제하다 gong-je-ha-da
delicious  맛이있다 mas-i it-da
dental school  치과대학 (치대) chi-kkwa-daehak (chi-daeh)
dentistry  치과 chi-kkwa
depart  출발하다 chul-bal-ha-da
department manager  과장 gwa-jang-nim
department store  백화점 bae-kwa-jeom
departure  출발하는 곳 chul-bal-ha-neun got
deposit  저금하다 joo-geum-ha-da, 예금하다 ye-geum-ha-da
deposit slip  입금표 ip-geum-pyo
deposit/withdrawal record  통장 tong-jang
design  디자인 di-ja-in
designer  디자이너 di-ja-i-neo
destiny  인연 in-yeon, 운명 un-myeeong
diarrhea  설사 seol-ssa
(have) diarrhea  설사하다 seol-ssa-ha-da
die  죽다 juk-da
difficult  어렵다 eo-ryeo-pa-da
dinner  저녁 jeo-nyeok
(have) dinner  저녁을 먹다 jeo-nyeog-eul meok-da
direct  직행 jik-haeng
directly  직접 jik-jeop

discount  깎아주다 kkakk-a-ju-da
disease  병 byeong, 질병 jil-byeong
dislike  싫다 sil-ta, 싫어하다 sil-eo-ha-da
dizzy  어지럽다 eo-ji-reop-da
do  하다 ha-da
doctor  의사 ui-sa, 의사 선생님 ui-sa seon-saeng-nim
dollar  per dollar
   달러 dal-la, 불 bul
   달러 달래도 dang
   아래 a-rae
   내리가다 nae-ryeo-ga-da, 내리다 nae-ri-da
   시나 si-nae
   그림을 그리다 geu-rim-eul geu-ri-da
   옷피스 won-pi-seu, 입다 ip-da
   입히다 i-pi-da
   음료수 eum-nyo-su, 마시다 ma-si-da

drink  something to drink
driver  운전하다 un-jeon-ha-da
   기사 gi-sa, 운전기사 un-jeon-gi-sa
   운전해서 un-jeon-hae-seo
   역곡 yak-guk, 역방 yak-bang
   드림 deu-reom
   드링클 트 디 deu-reom-chi-da
   말리다 mal-li-da
   드라이하다 deu-ra-i-ha-da
   드라이 deu-ra-i
   드라이울리 디 reu-ra-i-keul-li-nung
   그 동안 geu-dong-an
   염색하다 yeom-sae-ka-da
   염색 yeom-saek

education study

driving  운전하다 un-jeon-ha-da
   운전해서 un-jeon-hae-seo
   역곡 yak-guk, 역방 yak-bang
   드림 deu-reom
   드림클 트 디 deu-reom-chi-da
   말리다 mal-li-da
   드라이하다 deu-ra-i-ha-da
   드라이 deu-ra-i
   드라이울리 디 reu-ra-i-keul-li-nung
   그 동안 geu-dong-an
   염색하다 yeom-sae-ka-da
   염색 yeom-saek

driver  운전하다 un-jeon-ha-da
   운전해서 un-jeon-hae-seo
   역곡 yak-guk, 역방 yak-bang
   드림 deu-reom
   드림클 트 디 deu-reom-chi-da
   말리다 mal-li-da
   드라이하다 deu-ra-i-ha-da
   드라이 deu-ra-i
   드라이울리 디 reu-ra-i-keul-li-nung
   그 동안 geu-dong-an
   염색하다 yeom-sae-ka-da
   염색 yeom-saek

E

each  각각 각각 gwaek-gwaek
ear  귀 gwi
early  일찍 il-jiik
earn money  돈을 벌다 don-eul beol-da
eat  먹다 meok-da, 드시다 deu-si-da, 갑수다 jap-su-si-da
   먹어 보다 meog-eo bo-da
   경제학 geeong-je-hak
   교육학 gyo-yuk-hak

education study

Appendix 3: English-Korean Vocabulary 477
eight days
어 לקבלת yeo-deu-re
eight
여덟 yeo-deol, 골 pal
eighty
여든 yeo-deun
elementary school
초등학교 cho-deung-hak-gyo
elementary school student
초등학생 cho-deung-hak-saeng
employee
임원 jong-eob-won, 직원 jig-won
end
끝 kk-eut
end of the month
월말 wol-mal
end of the year
연말 yeon-nal
energy
기운 gi-un, 힘 him
(have no) energy
기운이 없다 gi-un-i zop-da
(lacking in) energy
기운이 없다 gi-un-i eop-da
engineer
엔지니어 en-ji-ni-eo, 기술자 gi-sul-jja
engineering
공학 gong-hak
engineering school
공과대학 (공대) gong-kkwa-dae-hak
(공대) gong-dae)
England
영국 yeong-guk
English
영어 yeong-eo
enter
들어가다 deul-eo-ga-da,
 들어가다 deul-eo-o-da
entrance
입구 ij-gu
envelope
예금통 yon-eum-ji-bong-tu
especially
특별히 teuk-byeo-li
even if it is true
그래도 geu-rae-do
even now
지금도 ji-geum-do
even though
그래도 geu-rae-do
evening
저녁 jae-nyeok
every day
매일 ma-il
every month
매월 ma-ce-wol
every week
매주 ma-ju
every year
매년 ma-nyeon
everyone
다들 da-deul
(exam) examination
중합검사 jong-hap-geom-sa
get an examination
검사를 하다/geom-sa-reul ha-da/bat-da
(exam a general)
examination
중합검사를 하다/geom-sa-reul ha-da/bat-da
examine (in a hospital)
진찰을 하다/ha-da/jin-chal-eul ha-da/bat-da
exchange
교환하다 gyo-hwan-ha-da,
exchange money
바꾸다 ba-ku-da, 바꾸다 ba-ku-da,
exchange rate
바꿔주다 ba-kwo-ju-da
exchanging currency
바讓他們 hwan-jeon-ha-da
excited
환하게 hwan-jeon-ha-gi
excuse me...
사나다 sin-na-da
exist
실태지만 sil-lye-ji-man
exit
나가는 곳 na-ga-neun got, 출구 chul-gu
express expensive
비싸다 bi-saa-da
express mail
بريد 우편 ppa-reu u-ryeon,
external department
속담 우편 sok-dal-u-ryeon
eye
눈 nun
F
face
얼굴 eol-gul
facial impression
인상 in-sang
(in) fact
사실 sa-sil-eun
Fahrenheit
화씨 hwa-sssi
fall
가을 ga-eul
family
산구 sik-gu, 가족 ga-jok
family members
산구 sik-gu, 가족 ga-jok
fan
전기 seon-pung-gi
far
멀다 meol-da
fast
지요 yo-geum
father
아빠 a-beo-ji
father-in-law
장인아들 jang-in-eo-neun,
February
이월 i-wol
fee
수수료 su-su-ryo
feed
먹이다 meog-i-da
fever
열 yeol
(fever) (have a) fever
열이 나다 yeol-i na-da
fifteen days
보통 bo-reum
fifty
천 swin
find
찾다 chat-da
find money
돈을 찾다 don-eul jup-da
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Korean</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fine arts</td>
<td>미술 mi-sul</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>finger</td>
<td>손가락 son-kka-rak</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fire</td>
<td>불 bul</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fire station</td>
<td>소방서 so-bang-seo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fire truck</td>
<td>소방차 so-bang-cha</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>first</td>
<td>첫 번째 meon-seo, 첫 번째 cheot-beon-jjae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>first-class mail</td>
<td>텔레그램 hang-gong u-pyeon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>for the first time</td>
<td>처음 cheo-eum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fish</td>
<td>생선 saeng-seon, 물고기 mul-kko-gi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fishing</td>
<td>낚시 nak-si</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go fishing</td>
<td>낚시를 가다/하다 nak-si-reul ga-da/ha-da</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fit</td>
<td>맞다 mat-da</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>make</td>
<td>맞추다 mat-chu-da</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>something fit</td>
<td>맞추다 ma-em-e deu-da, 맞추다 mb-e mat-da</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fitting room</td>
<td>탈의실 tal-ui-sil</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>five</td>
<td>다섯 da-seot, 오 o</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>five days</td>
<td>낯세 tat-sae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>floor</td>
<td>천 cheung</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>florist</td>
<td>화원 hwa-won</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>floss</td>
<td>치실 chi-sil, 혼란 kkon-mu-ni</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flower pattern</td>
<td>화원 hwa-won, 꽃집 kkot-jip</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flower shop</td>
<td>꽃집 peul-lut</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flute</td>
<td>꽃집을 불러 peul-lus-eul bul-da</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>follow</td>
<td>따라오다 tta-ra-e-da</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>food</td>
<td>음식 eum-sik</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>foot</td>
<td>발 발다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>on foot</td>
<td>걸어서 geol-eo-seo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>football</td>
<td>미식축구 mi-sik-chuk-gu, 꽃풀 put-bol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>play football</td>
<td>미식축구를 하나 mi-sik-chuk-gu-reul ha-da</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>forget</td>
<td>못먹어버리다 ij-eo-beo-ri-da</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>form</td>
<td>생각하다 saeng-gi-da</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>forty</td>
<td>마흔 ma-heun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>four</td>
<td>넷 net, 사 sa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>four days</td>
<td>나흘 na-heul</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>four-way intersection</td>
<td>사거리 sa-geo-ri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>France</td>
<td>프랑스 peu-rang-seeu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>freeze</td>
<td>얼다 eol-da, 얼음이 없다 eol-eum-i eol-da</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>freeze something</td>
<td>얼리다 eol-li-da</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>French</td>
<td>프랑스 사람 peu-rang-seeu sa-ram, 프랑스인 peu-rang-seeu-in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>French language</td>
<td>프랑스어 peu-rang-seeu-eo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Friday</td>
<td>금요일 geum-vo-il</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>front</td>
<td>앞 ap</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fall</td>
<td>놀이 부르다 bae-ga bu-reu-da, 가득차다 ga-deuk-cha-da</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fun</td>
<td>재미있다 jae-mi-it-da</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**G**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Korean</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>game</td>
<td>게임 ge-im, 놀이 nol-i</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gate</td>
<td>게이트 ge-i-tea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(in) general</td>
<td>보통 bo-tong</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>German</td>
<td>독일 사람 dog-il-ssa-ram, 독일인 dog-il-in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>German language</td>
<td>독일어 dog-il-ko</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Germany</td>
<td>독일 dog-il</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get off</td>
<td>떠나다 nae-ri-da</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get up</td>
<td>일어나다 i-i-ko-na-da</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>give</td>
<td>주다 ju-da, 드리다 deu-ri-da</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>give a present</td>
<td>선물하다 seon-mui-da</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>give money</td>
<td>돈을 주다 don-ui-ju-da</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>glad</td>
<td>번갈아 ban-gap-da</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>glass</td>
<td>갑단한 jang-gap</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>glasses</td>
<td>갑단한 jang-gap</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gloves</td>
<td>갑단한 jang-gap</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go</td>
<td>갑다 ga-da</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go back</td>
<td>되돌아 가다 doe-dol-a ga-da</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go directly</td>
<td>바로 가다 ba-ro ga-da</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go out</td>
<td>나가다 na-ja-da</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go over</td>
<td>넘다 neom-tta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go straight</td>
<td>목바로 가다 tok-ba-ro ga-da, 직접하다 jik-jin-ha-da</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>going on well</td>
<td>잘 되다 jal doe-da</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>golf</td>
<td>골프 gol-peu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>play golf</td>
<td>골프를 치다 gol-peu-reul chi-da</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>good</td>
<td>잘 되다 jal doe-da</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gradually</td>
<td>점점 jeom-jeom</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>graduate school</td>
<td>대학원 dae-hag-won</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
 BEGINNER'S KOREAN

graduate student 대학원생 dae-hag-won-saeng
grandchild 손주 son-ju
granddaughter 손녀 son-nyeo
grandfather 할아버지 hal-a-beo-ji
grandmother 할머니 hal-meo-ri
grandson 손자 son-ja
gray 회색 hae-saek
(light) green 초록색 cho-rok-saek
ground mail 일반우편 il-ban u-yeon
ground transportation 차 타는 곡 cha ta-neun got
ground 영 tiang
grow 자라다 ja-ra-da
guest 손님 son-nim
hat 기타 gi-ta
play guitar 기타를 치다 gi-ta-reul chi-da
H
hair 머리 meo-ri
(b)ack of hair 뒷머리 dwit-meo-ri
(front) of hair 앞머리 am-meo-ri
(s)ide of head 쪽머리 yeon-meo-ri
long hair 긴 머리 gin meo-ri
short hair 짧은 머리 jjaeb-eun meo-ri
shoulder-length hair 단발머리 dan-bal meo-ri
hair color 머리 색갈 meo-ri-sae-gal
hair cream 헤어 크림 he-eo keu-rim
hair mousse/gel 머스/젤리 mu-sseu/jel-li
put on hair mousse/gel 머스/젤리를 바르다 mu-sseu/Jel-li-reul
ba-reu-da
hair quality 머리질 meo-ri kkyeo-l
hair spray 스프레이를 뿌린다 seu-peo-re-i-reul ha-da
put on hair spray 스프레이를 바르다 seu-peo-re-i-reul ha-da
hair straightening 스트레이트 하다 seu-teu-re-i-teu pa-ma

Appendix 3: English-Korean Vocabulary

hair stylist 미용사 mi-yong-sa,
(get a) haircut 해어 디자이너 heo di-ja-i-neo
hairpin 머리핀 meo-ri-pin
hand 손 son
happy 기쁘다 gi-ppeu-da, 즐겁다 jeul-geop-da,
행복하다 keo-teu-ha-da
hair hard 힘들다 him-deul-da, 앉박하다 tak-tta-ka-da
hard work 고생 go-saeng
hat 모자 mo-ja
have (to) not have 있다 it-da, 가지다 ga-ji-da
head 머리 meo-ri
headache 두통 du-tong
(have a) headache 머리 아프다 meo-ri a-peu-da
health 건강 geon-gang
health insurance 건강보험 kaeng-gang-bo-boom
health insurance card 의료보험카드 i-ryo-bo-boom-ka-deu
hear 들다 deul-da
heard 들이다 deul-li-da
heavy 무겁다 mu-geop-da
help 도와주다 do-wa-ju-da,
hold 안타 an-ta
home 막 daek (hon.), 집 jip
hospital 병원 byung-won
hospitalized 입원하다 ib-won-ha-da
hot 더워지다 deo-wi-jda
hot become hot get hot
hot day 더운 날 deo-un nael
hour
house
how
How about ~
How is it?
how long/much/many?
how many items?
how much?
humanities, school of
humid
humidity
hundred
hundred million
hungry
hurry
in a hurry
hurt
husband
I
if
imagine, unable to
in
increase
increased
indigestion
have indigestion
indoor
(get) injected
injured
inside
put inside
insurance card

interesting
interestingly
internal department
intestine
(have) intestinal trouble
iron
item
J
jacket
jammed
January
Japan
Japanese
Japanese food
Japanese language
Japanese restaurant
jaywalk
job
jog
jogging
journalist
juice
July
June
junior high school
junior high school student
just
just in case
just in time
K
karaoke room
kid
kill
kitchen
kindergarten
kindergarten student
knee

재미있다 jae-mi-it-da
재미있게 jae-mi-it-ge
내과 nae-kkwa
장 jang
장병에 걸린다 jang-yeom-e geol-li-da
다리가 da-ri-mi, 다리절함다 da-rim-jil-ha-da
항목 hang-mok, 개 gae
자켓 ja-ket
막히다 ma-ki-da
일월 il-wol
일본 il-bon
일본 사람들이 il-bon-sa-rahn, 일본인 il-bon-in
일식 il-ssik, 일본음식 il-bon-eum-sik
일본어 il-bon-eo
일식당 il-ssik-dang, 일본식당 il-bon-sik-dang
부산항만을 다니다 mu-dan hoeng-dan-eul ha-da
알리, 직접 jig-eop
조리관을 하다 jo-ging-eul ha-da
조리 요 jie-ging
키지 gi-ja
주스 ju-seu
월월 chil-wol
유월 yu-wol
줄석교 jang-hak-gyo
중학생 jang-hak-saeng
그날 gu-nyang
혹시 hok-si
아랫 ma-chim

생생하다 sang-sang-i an-doe-da
소화불량 so-hwa-bul-yang
소화가 안 돼다 so-hwa-ga an-doe-da
임상비다 in-sang-ha-da
임상보다 in-sang-doe-da
실내 sil-hae
주사를 맞다 ju-sa-reul mat-da
다치다 da-chi-da
속 sok, 안 an
병沙发 neo-ta
보험카드 bo-heom-ka-deu

노래방 no-rae-bang
아이 a-i
죽이다 jug-i-da
검지 gim-chi
유치원 yu-chi-won
유치원생 yu-chi-won-saeng
무릎 mu-rcup
BEGINNER'S KOREAN

know
(to) not know
Korea
Korean
Korean food
Korean language
Korean restaurant
Korean won

L
language
late
later
laugh
(make someone) laugh
laundry
law school
law study
lawyer
lay down
lay someone down
layer
leave
left
left turn
leg
lend
length
let's do that
letter
letter paper
light
like
(to) not like
like that
like this

linguistics
listen
literature
little
live
long
long time no see
look around
look for
look good
look heavy
look soft
lose
lose money
(a) lot
loud
loudly
low
(make something) low
lucky
lunch
lunch time

M
magazine
mail
registered mail
regular mail
mailbox
make
mail
man
manner
many
March
marry
match well
mathematics

Appendix 3: English-Korean Vocabulary

언어학 eon-eo-hak
dicta deut-da
문학 mun-hak
조금 jo-geum, 조금만 jo-geum-man, 조금 jom
살다 sal-da
깊다 gil-da
오래간만이다 o-rose-gan-man-i-da
구경하다 gu-gyeong-ha-da
확하다 chaj-a-bo-da, 찾다 chat-da
غان차이 보이다 gwaen-chan-a bo-i-da
답답해 보이다 dap-dap-hae bo-i-da
부드러워 보이다 bu-du-eo-reo-wo bo-i-da
돌다 pul-da, 고르다 kkeu-reo-da
없다 il-ta, 지다 ji-da
돈을 잃다 don-eul il-ta
많이 man-i
시끄럽다 si-keu-reo-da
시끄럽게 si-keu-reo-ge, 크게 keu-ge
낮다 nat-da
낮추다 nat-chu-da
다행이다 da-haeng-i-da
점심 jeon-sim
점심시간 jeon-sim-si-gan

정지 jap-ji
우편을 u-pyeon-mul
d기우편 deung-gi u-pyeon
보통 우편 bo-tong u-pyeon,
일반우편 il-ban u-pyeon
우체통 u-che-tong
만큼만 man-deul-da
상가 sang-ga
남자 nam-ja
예의 ye-ui
많다 man-ta
상월 sam-wol
결혼하다 gyeol-hon-ha-da
어울리다 eo-ul-li-da
수학 su-hak
most, the  제일, je-il
mother  어머니 eo-meo-ni
mother-in-law  장모님 jang-mo-nim, 시어머니 si-eo-meo-nim
motorcycle  오토바이 o-to-ba-i
mountain  산 san
mountain side  산 쪽 san sjok
mouth  입 ip
mouthwash  마우스위시 ma-u-seu-wo-si
move  이사하다 i-sa-ha-da
movie  영화 yeong-hwa
moving  이사 i-sa
muffler  목도리 mok-do-ri
muggy  끓곤하다 kkeun-kkeun-ha-da
museum  박물관 bang-mul-gwan
music  음악 eum-sk
music school  음악대학 (독대) eum-sk-dae-hak (eum-dae)
my  내 nae, 제 je

N
name  성명 seong-myeong, 성함 seong-ham,

near  근처 geun-cheo
nearby  근처 geta-cheo, 여 yeop
neat and fresh  산뜻하다 san-teeu-ta-da
neck  목 mok
necktie  넥타이 nek-ta-i
need  필요하다 pil-yo-ha-da
need money  돈이 필요 don-i-deul-da
nephew  남자 조카 nam-ja-jo-ka
New Zealand  뉴질랜드 nyu-ji-lan-deu
New Zealander  뉴질랜드인 nyu-ji-lan-deu-in,

newly  새로 sae-ro
newly released  새로 나오다 sae-ro na-o-da
niece  여제 조카 yeo-ja-jo-ka
night  밤 bam

for all night  밤새로록 bam-sae-do-rok
nine  구 gu, 아홉 a-hop
nine days  아홉 일 a-heu-re
ninety  아흔 a-heun
no
non-stop
nose
not
November
now
number
nurse

ar覽 a-ni-o
적행 jik-haeng
코 ko
안 an
십일월 sib-il-wol
비제 i-je, 지금 ji-geum
앞으로 ap-eu-ro
번 beon, 번호 beon-ho
간호사 gan-ho-sa, 간호원 gan-ho-won
시 si
시월 si-wol
그럼요 geu-reom-yo
사무실 sa-mu-sil
회사원 hoe-sa-won
자주 ja-ju
아이구 a-i-gu, 아참 a-cham
바른 악 ba-reu-neun nyak, 연고 yeon-go
랜션다 gwaen-chan-ta, 루다 jo-ta
نة neulk-da, 연세가 많으시다 yeon-se-ga man-eu-si-da, 날다 na-kda, 오래보다 o-rae-doe-da, 나이가 많다 na-i-ga man-ta
나이드신 분들 na-i-deu-sin bun-deul, 노인들 no-in-deul
한번 han-beon
하나 ha-na, 일 il
한장 ha-jan
하루 ha-ru
한월 han-byol
흡자 hon-ja
그냥 geu-nyang
열다 yeol-da
열린다 yeol-li-da
동창 만들기 tong-jang man-deul-gi
재가 보기에는 je-ga bo-gi-e-neun
안과 an-kkwa
아니면 a-ni-myeon
주황색 ju-hwang-saek, 오렌지 o-ren-ji
서키다 si-ki-da, 주문하나 ju-mun-ha-da,
경리하다 jeong-ri-ha-da
날들 iam-deul
무리 u-ri, 저희 jeo-hi
바깔 ba-kkat, 박 bak
타원형 ta-won-yeong
걸치다 gyeop-chi-da
족교 yuk-gyo
주인 ju-in
소포 so-po
바지 ba-j
정장 바지 jeong-jang ba-ji
스타킹 seu-ta-king
부모 bu-mo, 부모님 bu-mo-nim
특별히 teuk-byeoel-hi
특별히 teuk-byeoel-hi
발로 byeoel-lo
돌아가시다 dol-a-ga-si-da
혈형 haeng-in
여권 yeo-kkwo
목사 mok-sa, 목사님 mok-sa-nim
참다 chan-tta, 힘자 hwan-ja
안녕히 an-nyeong-hi
영화가 so-a-kkwa
생리하다 saeng-ri-ha-da
파마 pa-ma
파마리 pa-ma neo-ri
파마하다 pa-ma-ha-da
분 bun, 사람 sa-ram, 명 myeong
약사 yak-sa
사진관 sa-jin-gwan
물리학 mul-li-hak
피아노 pi-a-no
피아노를 치다 pi-a-no-reul chi-da
picture

动作 geu-rim, 사진 sa-jin

take a picture

사진을 찍다 sa-jin-eul jik-da

pill

약 약 al-lyak

PN number

비밀번호 bi-mi-beon-ho

药 구 tak-gu

ping-pong

탁구를 치다 tak-gu-reul chi-da

play ping-pong

분홍색 bun-hong-sack

place

장소 jang-so

other places

다른 데 da-reun de

platform

플랫폼 peul-laet-pom

play

놀다 nol-da, 연극 yeon-geuk

play for someone’s

볼아두다 nol-a-ju-da

benefit

please

어서 eo-seo, 줄 jom

P.M.

오후 o-hu

police

경찰 gyeong-chal

police station

경찰서 gyeong-chal-sseo

political science

정치학 jeong-chi-hak

pork

돼지고기 dwae-ji-go-gi

post office

우체국 u-che-guk

post office employee

우체국 직원 u-che-guk jig-won

postage

우편 요금 u-pyeon-yo-geum

postcard

엽서 yeop-seo

postman

우체부 u-che-bu

pound

파운드 pa-un-deu

powder

가루 ga-ru

prescription

처방전 cheo-bang-jeon

present

선물 seon-mul

president (of a company)

사장 sa-jang

pretty

예쁘다 ye-ppeu-da

(for) prevention

예방용 ye-bang-nyong

price

가격 ga-gyeok, 값 gap

original price

제가 je-pum

professor

교수 gyo-su

psychology

심리학 sim-ni-hak

pull out

볼다 ppop-da

purple

보라색 bo-ra-saek
BEGINNER’S KOREAN

round
(by) running
runny nose
have a runny nose
Russia
Russian
Russian language

sad
safely
sale period
salesperson
salty
same
San Diego
Saturday
save money

scallion
scallion pancake
scared
scart
school year
sciences, school of
sea
seaside
seal
seat
seat number
seat someone
secretary
see
seen
sell

send
sender
sending mail
Seoul
September
serious
service
set
seven
seven days
seventy
7-up (beverage)
several
several days
severe
shake
shake off
shampoo
shape
share
share a ride
sheet
ship
shirt
dress shirt
tennis/golf shirt
shoe store
shoes
put on shoes
shop
shopping
go shopping
short
shortly
shoulder
show

부치다 bu-chi-da, 보내다 bo-nae-da
보내는 사람 bo-nae-neun sa-ram
편지 부치기 pyeo-ji bu-chi-gi
서울 seou-ul
구월 gu-wol
심하다 sim-ha-da
서비스 sseo-bi-seu
확추하다 mat-chu-da
일곱 il-gup, 칠 chil
이래 i-re
일흔 il-heun
사이다 sa-i-da
몇 가지 myeo-ja-gi, 몇 myeoot
며칠 myeo-chil
북하다 do-ka-da, 희하다 sim-ha-da
흔들다 heun-deul-da
mouseup tsool-da
머리를garda meo-ri-reul gam-tta,
삼푸하다 syam-pu-ha-da
모양 mo-yang
함께 쓰다 ham-kkke sseu-da,
같이 쓰다 ga-chi sseu-da
승습 하다 hap-seung-ha-da
장 jang
배 bac
셔츠 syeo-choeu
와이셔츠 wa-i-syeo-choeu
남방 nam-bang
신발가게 sin-bal-kka-ge,
양화점 yang-hwa-jecom
신발 sin-bal
신기다 sin-gi-da
가게 ga-ge
소핑 syo-ping
소핑가 syo-ping-ga-da
endereco jialp-da
الة jialp-ge
어깨 eo-kae
보여 주다 bo-yeo ju-da
Appendix 3: English-Korean Vocabulary

someone
누구 nu-gu, 누가 nu-ga
something
omething nu-eot, 워 mwo
sometime
언제 eon-je
somewhere
어디 ec-di
son
아들 a-deul
song
노래 no-rae
son-in-law
사위 sa-wi
soon
금방 geum-bang, 곧 got
sore throat, have a
목감기에 걸리다 mok-gam-gi-e geol-li-da,
목이 빚다 mog-i but-da
sorry
죄송하다 joo-seng-ha-da,
Spain
스페인 seu-pe-in,
Spanish
스페인 사람 seu-pe-in sa-rum,
Spanish language
스페인어 seu-pe-in-eo
speak
말하다 mal-ha-da,
special
특별한 teuk-byeol-han
special care
특별대우 teuk-byeol-da-eu
special day
특별한 날 teuk-byeol-han-nal
spend
돈을 쓰다 don-eul sseu-da
spend money
zendai ji-nae-da
spicy
매달 maep-da
sports
운동 un-dong
sportsman
운동선수 un-dong-scon-su
spring
봄 bom
spy movie
첩보영화 cheop-bo-yeong-hwa
square
정사각형 jeong-sa-gu-kyeong
stamp
우표 u-pyo, 도장 do-jang
put on a stamp
우표를 붙이다 u-pyo-reul bu-chi-da
start
시작하다 si-ja-ka-da
stay
제사 gye-si-da
sticky
 وحتى kkeun-kkeun-ha-da
still
아직 a-jik
Appendix 3: English-Korean Vocabulary

stomach
have stomach pain on an empty stomach

stop
stop by store
story
straight
strange
street
stressed

stripe pattern
strong

student
subway
suit
summer
Sunday
supermarket
sure, for
Su-won
sweet
sweater
sweet
swim
swimming
swimming pool
switch
swoollen
symptom

T
tablet
take away
take care

take off
take someone
take something
taken away
talk
tart
tastily
tasty
taxi
teacher
teacher education school
telephone

make a
telephone call


telephone number
television (TV)
temperature
ten
ten days
ten thousand
tender
tennis

play tennis

thank
thanks to (you)
that
that one
that over there
that side
that side over there
that’s right
then
there
these days


teaching jeon-hwa-ha-da
전화번호 jeon-hwa-beon-ho
televisie nol-le-bi-jeon
온도 on-do, 기온 gi-on
십 sip, 열 yeol
열흘 yeul-heul
만 man
연하하다 yeon-ha-da
테니스 te-ni-seu
테니스를 치다 te-ni-seu-reul chi-da
감사하다 gam-sa-ha-da, 고맙다 go-map-da
명예에 deok-bun-e
그 geu
그것이 geu-geol-i
저 jeo
그 빌 geu jik
저 쪽 jik-jeo
그렇나 geu-reom-ku-na, 맞아요 maj-a-yo
그럼 geu-reom
거기 geo-gi
저기 jeo-gi
요즘 yoo-jeum
thick
thin
things
things for elderly people
things that are needed
thirsty
thirty
this
this and that
thousand
three
three days
throat
Thursday
ticket
tie
tile
time
have time
taxe time
time to leave the office
times
tired
today
tear
together
tomorrow
day after
tomorrow
too
tooth
toothache, have a
toothpaste
top
tough
towel
have a towel-dry
town
toy
toy store
traffic signal
train
transfer
place to transfer
travel
triangle
trillion
trim
trouble
trumpet
try
try on (clothes)
Tuesday
turn
make a left turn
make a right turn
turn left
turn on
turn right
twenty
two
U
uh uh (no)
uncle
under
underneath
underpass
underwear
undress

장난감 가게 ja-nan-gam ga-ge
신호등 sin-ho-deung
기차 gi-cha
갈아타다 gal-a-ta-da
갈아타는 곳 gal-a-ta-neun got
여행 yeo-haeng, 여행을 하다/ga-da
yeo-haeng-eul ha-da/ga-da
정삼각형 jeong-sam-ga-kyeong
조 jo
d음다다 da-deum-tta,
다음주 다 da-deum-co ju-da
문제 mun-je
큰일 남다. keun-il na-da
터럼펫 teu-room-pet
터럼펫을 불다 teu-room-pes-eul bul-da
해 보다 hae bo-da
있어 보다 it-ee-bo-da
화요일 hwa-yo-il
돌리다 dol-li-da
최회전하다 jwa-hoe-jeon-ha-da
우회전하다 u-hoe-jeon-ha-da,
원쪽으로 가다 oen-jjog-eu-ro ga-da
돌아 놓다 teul-co no-ta
오른쪽으로 가다 o-reun-jjog-eu-ro ga-da
스무 seu-mul
스무날 seu-mu-nal
둘 dul, ol i
two
two days 이동 han i-real jeon

아무 eo-meo
삼촌 sam-chon, 큰아버지 keun-a-beo-ji,
작은 아버지 jag-eun a-beo-ji,
외삼촌 oe-sam-chon, 고모부 go-mo-bu,
이고부 u-mo-bu
아래 a-nie, 이 mit
밀 mit
지하도 ji-ha-do
속옷 sog-ot
옷다 beot-da
undress someone: 벗기다 beot-gi-da
university: 대학교 dae-hak-gyo
university street: 대학로 dae-hang-no
uneat: 풀다 pul-da, 골다 kkeu-reu-da
unusual: 이상하다 i-sang-ha-da
up: 위 wi
up: 올라가다 ol-la-ga-da, 오르다 o-reu-da
us: 우리 u-ri, 저희 jeo-hi
use: 사용하다 sa-yong-ha-da, 쓰다 sseu-da
used: 쓰이다 sseu-da

V

vacation: 방학 bang-hak, 휴가 hyu-ga
very: 아주 a-ju
videotape: 비디오 bi-di-o
village: 동네 dong-ne
viola: 비올라 vi-ol-la-reul kyeo-da
violin: 바이올린 va-i-ol-in

play violin: 바이올린을 연다 va-i-ol-in-eul kyeo-da
visa: 비자 bi-ja
visitor: 손님 son-nim
volleyball: 배구 bae-gu

play volleyball: 배구를 하다 bae-gu-reul ha-da
volume: 높 gwon
vomit: 토하다 to-ha-da

W

waist: 허리 heo-ri
waist: 기다리다 gi-da-ri-da
waiter: 총원장 jong-eb-woon
waitress: 여총원장 yeo-jong-eb-woon
wake someone up: 일어나다 il-eo-na-da, 깨다 kkae-da
walk: 걸다 geot-da
walking: 걸어서 geol eo-seo

wash: 벗다 ssiit-da, 빨다 ppal-da
wash dishes: 설거지를 하다 seot geo ji-reul ha-da

Appendix 3: English-Korean Vocabulary

wash hair: 머리 갔다 moe-ri gam-tta
wash one's face: 세숫을 하다 se-su-reul ha-da
wash one's hands/feet: 손발을 빗다 son-bal-ul ssit-da
wash out: 립스 하다 rin-seu ha-da, 행구다 heng-gu-da
washing machine: 세탁기 se-tak-gi
watch (noun): 시계 si-ge
watch (verb): 보다 bo-da
watch a movie: 영화 보다 yeong-hwa bo-da
watch a videotape: 비디오토 보다 yi-di-o-reul bo-da
watch repair store: 시계 방 si-ge ppang
television: 텔레비전 bo da tel-le bi jeon-eul bo-da
melon: 물 mul
watermelon: 수박 su-bak

by the way: 그런테 geu-reon-de
on the way: 그날에 jung-gan-e, 도중에 do-jung-e
this way: 이리 i-ri
we: 우리 u-ri, 저희 jeo-hi
weak: 약하다 ya-ka-da
wear: 입다 ip-da, 입어 보다 ib-co-bo-da,
   감다 kkop-da, 커다 kki-da,
   두르다 du-reu-da, 신다 sin-tta
weather: 날씨 nai-ssi
weather forecast: 일기예보 il-ki-yeo-bo
Wednesday: 수요일 su-yo-il
week: 주 ju
last week: 지난 주 ji-nan ju
next week: 다음 주 da-eum-ju
this week: 이번 주 i-beon-ju
weekday: 주제 ju-jung
weekend: 주말 ju-mal
welcome party: 환영회 hwan-yeng-hoe
anonymity: an-nyeong ha-da,
well: 자마다 jal it-da, 자 Jal

Western food: 양식 yang-sik
Western liquor: 양주 yang-ju
Western restaurant: 양식당 yang-sik-dang
wet: 젖다 jeot-da
wet towel: 출수건 mul-ssu-geon
Appendix 3: English-Korean Vocabulary

wrestle (verb) 레슬링을 하다 re-seul-ling-eul ha-da
wrestling 레슬링 re-seul-ling
write 쓰다 sseu-da, 써 주다 sseu ju-da
drafting을 쓰다 dap-jang-eul sseu-da
writer 작가 jak-ga
written 써 있다 sseu it-da

Y

year 년 nyeon
  last year 작년 jang-nyeon
  next year 내년 nae-nyeon
  this year 금년 geum-nyeon, 올해 ol-hae
  year after 내후년 nea-hu-nyeon
  next year 내후년 nea-hu-nyeon
  year before 작년 jae-nyeon
  last year 작년 jae-nyeon
yellow 노란색 no-ran-sae, 노란 no-ran,
  (light) yellow 노랗다 no-ru-da
yes 네, 예 ye
yesterday 어제 eo-je
  day before 어제 eo-je
yet 그저께 geu-jeo-kie, 그저 geu-je
young 어리다 eo-ri-da, 어리 di jeon-tta

Z

zero 공 gong, 영 yeong
zip code 우편번호 u-pyeon-beon-ho
CD TRACK LIST

DISC ONE

1. Alphabet and Pronunciation Guide

Lesson One

2. Patterns
3. Model Conversations 1
4. Model Conversations 2
5. Model Conversations 3
6. Vocabulary

Lesson Two

7. Patterns
8. Model Conversations 1
9. Model Conversations 2
10. Model Conversations 3
11. Model Conversations 4
12. Vocabulary

Lesson Three

13. Patterns
14. Model Conversations 1
15. Model Conversations 2
16. Model Conversations 3
17. Vocabulary
Lesson Four

18. Patterns
19. Model Conversations 1
20. Model Conversations 2
21. Model Conversations 3
22. Vocabulary

Lesson Five

23. Patterns
24. Model Conversations 1
25. Model Conversations 2
26. Model Conversations 3
27. Vocabulary

Lesson Six

28. Patterns
29. Model Conversations 1
30. Model Conversations 2
31. Model Conversations 3
32. Vocabulary

Lesson Seven

33. Patterns
34. Model Conversations 1
35. Model Conversations 2
36. Model Conversations 3
37. Vocabulary

Lesson Eight

1. Patterns
2. Model Conversations 1
3. Model Conversations 2
4. Model Conversations 3
5. Model Conversations 4
6. Vocabulary

Lesson Nine

7. Patterns
8. Model Conversations 1
9. Model Conversations 2
10. Model Conversations 3
11. Vocabulary

Lesson Ten

12. Patterns
13. Model Conversations 1
14. Model Conversations 2
15. Model Conversations 3
16. Vocabulary

Lesson Eleven

17. Patterns
18. Model Conversations 1
19. Model Conversations 2
20. Model Conversations 3
21. Vocabulary
Lesson Twelve

22. Patterns
23. Model Conversations 1
24. Model Conversations 2
25. Model Conversations 3
26. Vocabulary